This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

William Collins, Sons, & Co.'s Educational Works.

COLLINS' ELEMENTARY AND ADVANCED SCIENCE SERIES,

Adapted to the requirements of the South Kensington Syllabus, for Students in Science and Art Classes, and Higher and Middle Class Schools.

ELEMENTARY SERIES.

In Fcap. 8vo, fully Illustrated, cloth lettered, price 1s. each volume.

1. PRACTICAL PLANE AND SOLID GEOMETRY. By H. Angel, Islington Science School, London.
2. MACHINE CONSTRUCTION AND DRAWING. By E. Tomkins. Vol. I. Text, Vol. II. Plates.
3A BUILDING CONSTRUCTION—Stone, Brick, and Slate Work: By R. S. Burn, C.E. Vol. I. Text, Vol. II. Plates.
3B BUILDING CONSTRUCTION—Timber and Iron Work. By R.S. Burn, C.E. Vol. I. Text, Vol. II. Plates.
4A NAVAL ARCHITECTURE—Laying off. By S. J. P. Thearle, F.R.S.N.A., London. Vol. I. Text, 1s. Vol. II. Plates, 2s.
4B NAVAL ARCHITECTURE—Wood and Iron Shipbuilding. By S. J. P. Thearle. Vol. I. Text, 1s. Vol. II. Plates, 2s.
5. PURE MATHEMATICS. By L. Sergeant, B. A. (Camb.).
6. THEORETICAL MECHANICS. By W. Rossiter, F.R.A.S.
7. APPLIED MECHANICS. By W. Rossiter, F.R.A.S.
8. ACOUSTICS, LIGHT, AND HEAT. By William Lees, A.M.
9. MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY By John Angell, Senior Science Master, Grammar School, Manchester.
10. INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By Dr. W. B. Kemshead, F.R.A.S.
11. ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By W. Marshall Watts, D.Sc.
12. GEOLOGY. By W. S. Davis, LL.D., Derby.
13. MINERALOGY. By J. H. Collins, F.G.S., Falmouth.
14. ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY. By John Angell, Manchester.
15. ZOOLOGY. By M. Harbison, Newtonards.
16. VEGETABLE ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY. By J. H. Balfour, M.D., Edinburgh University.
17. SYSTEMATIC AND ECONOMIC BOTANY. By Prof. Balfour.
18A PRINCIPLES OF MINING—Coal. By J. H. Collins, F.G.S.
18B PRINCIPLES OF MINING—Iron. By J. H. Collins, F.G.S.
19. METALLURGY. By John Mayer, F.C.S., Glasgow.
20. NAVIGATION. By Henry Evers, LL.D., Plymouth.
21. NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY. By Henry Evers, LL.D.
22A STEAM and the STEAM ENGINE—Land and Marine. By H. Evers, LL.D., Plymouth.
22B STEAM ENGINE—Locomotive. By H. Evers, LL.D.
23. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By John Macturk, F.R.G.S.
24. PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. By John Howard, London.
25. ASTRONOMY. By J. J. Plummer, Observatory, Durham.
26. MANUAL OF QUALITATIVE CHEMICAL ANALYSIS. By F. Beilstein. Translated by William Ramsay, D.Na.Sc.

Extra Volumes, Post 8vo, Cloth, 1s. 6d.

7B APPLIED MECHANICS. By Henry Evers, LL.D.
15B GENERAL BIOLOGY. By T. C. MacGinley.

London, Edinbu **Glasgow.**

William Collins, Sons, & Co.'s Educational Works.

ADVANCED SCIENCE SERIES,

Adapted to the requirements of the South Kensington Syllabus, for Students in Science and Art Classes, and Higher and Middle Class Schools.

In the Press, and in Preparation, Post 8vo, fully Illustrated, cloth lettered, price 2s. 6d. each volume.

1. PRACTICAL PLANE AND SOLID GEOMETRY. By Professor F. A. BRADLEY, London.
2. MACHINE CONSTRUCTION AND DRAWING. By E. TOMKINS, Liverpool. Vol. I. Text, Vol. II. Plates.
3. BUILDING CONSTRUCTION. By R. S. BURN, C.E. 2 vols.
4. NAVAL ARCHITECTURE—LAYING OFF AND SHIPBUILDING. By S. J. P. THEARLE, F.R.S.N.A., London. Vol. I. Text, 2s. 6d. Vol. II. Plates, 5s.
5. PURE MATHEMATICS. By E. ATKINS, Leicester. 2 vols.
6. THEORETICAL MECHANICS. By. P. GUTHRIE TAIT, Professor of Natural Philosophy, Edinburgh.
7. APPLIED MECHANICS. By Professor O. REYNOLDS.
8. ACOUSTICS, LIGHT, AND HEAT. By W. S. DAVIS, LL.D.
9. MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. By F. GUTHRIE, B.A., Ph.D., Royal School of Mines, London.
10. INORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., F.R.S.E., Professor of Chemistry, Glasgow. 2 vols.
11. ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By JAMES DEWAR, F.R.S.E., F.C.S., Lecturer on Chemistry, Edinburgh.
12. GEOLOGY. By JOHN YOUNG, M.D., Professor of Natural History, Glasgow University.
13. MINERALOGY. By J. H. COLLINS, F.G.S., Falmouth.
14. ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY. By J. CLELAND, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Anatomy and Physiology, Galway.
15. ZOOLOGY. By E. RAY LANKESTER, M.A. (Oxon.), London.
16. VEGETABLE ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY. By J. H. BALFOUR, M.D., Edinburgh University.
17. SYSTEMATIC AND ECONOMIC BOTANY. By J.H. BALFOUR M.D., Edinburgh University.
19. METALLURGY. By W. H. GREENWOOD, A.R.S.M. 2 vols.
20. NAVIGATION. By HENRY EVERS, LL.D., Plymouth.
21. NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY. BY HENRY EVERS, LL.D.
22. STEAM AND THE STEAM ENGINE—LAND, MARINE, AND LOCOMOTIVE. By H. EVERS, LL.D., Plymouth.
23. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By JOHN YOUNG, M.D., Professor of Natural History, Glasgow University.

London, Edinburgh, and Herriot Hill Works, Glasgow.

Collins' Elementary Science Series.

ELEMENTS

OF

ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY,

CHIEFLY HUMAN.

With Hints on Practical Work, Dissection, &c.

BY

JOHN ANGELL,

SENIOR SCIENCE MASTER, MANCHESTER GRAMMAR SCHOOL.

ILLUSTRATED WITH 92 FIGURES.

ENLARGED EDITION.

BIBLIOTHECA · BODLEIANA

LONDON AND GLASGOW:
WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS, & CO.
1875.

[All rights reserved.]

165. g. 28.

PREFACE.

ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY is "essentially a Science of Designs and Final Causes." Probably no subject, if taught with even moderate intelligence, can be rendered so interesting, or made to rouse the dormant energies of the intellect of young people, and of those previously untrained in the method of scientific inquiry, as that of Human Physiology. Certainly the study of no other science opens up to the mind so many wonders, solves so many human mysteries, or brings home to the mind so many proofs of the "reign of Law," and of the wise and beneficent design of this universe, or teaches so many principles which lie at the basis of human health, morals, and well-being, as that of Human Physiology. On these considerations alone,—and many other most powerful ones might be urged,—"Human Physiology" must claim a leading position in any system which professes to educate the people *soundly*.

Very considerable experience as a Teacher of Physiology, with the youthful and adult of both sexes, has proved to the writer the facility with which the *viva voce* teaching of Elementary Physiology may be made "perfectly sound and thorough," when supplemented with the aid of *good diagrams*, a good *text-book*, and the free use of the *black-board*, and of the lungs, heart, kidney, eye, &c., of the sheep, and of such other objects as may be readily obtained from the butcher, for the illustration of the general structure of the corresponding organs of the human body; while the body of the *living* frog or tadpole is amply sufficient to illustrate the general phenomena of the circulation and the properties of the *living* tissues. The teacher should also occasionally dissect a small animal, as a rabbit, recently killed with chloroform, before his class. A Human Skeleton and a cheap Microscope will likewise be found invaluable aids to the earnest teacher.

A general impression prevails, among the candidates presenting themselves at the Government Science Examinations, that it is easier to pass with the same actual knowledge in the Second Class, Advanced Stage, than in the First Class, Elementary Stage. The prevalence of this error can only have resulted from the candidates having confined their attention too exclusively to the subjects *named* in the Syllabus of the Elementary Stage, whereas it is impossible to obtain a *sound*, however elementary, knowledge of these subjects themselves, without their also making themselves familiar, as it were, with the atmosphere of facts immediately surrounding them. To obviate this difficulty, promote greater soundness of attainment, and especially with the object of cultivating the higher reasoning powers of the young student in dealing with the principles of the science, rather than encourage in him the acquisition of the power of what may be expressed as mere "descriptive cram," the writer has dealt, as at the opening of the book, and in treating of the blood and the tissues, far more with the principles and the reasoning of the subject than is usual in treatises of the same limited and elementary character. He has therefore been compelled to extend the range of this little work beyond the subjects actually named in the Syllabus of the *Elementary* stage issued by the Department of Science and Art. He has also everywhere sought,—as by sectionizing the work, by making it as *practical* as possible, by the mode of keying the diagrams, &c.,—to make it as clear and thorough as his limits would permit, never hesitating to repeat, where he felt repetition would be advantageous to the student.

The writer begs, in conclusion, to express his indebtedness to the works of Bennett, Carpenter, Combe, Gray, Lawson, Marshall, Playfair, Huxley, and others; to the latter especially for kindly allowing him to copy some of the diagrams in his text-book on the same subject. To Professor Huxley all friends of the cause of scientific education are, in common with the writer, indebted, not only for his labours as an Englishman in extending the domains of Biological Science, but also for his able and successful advocacy of the claims of "Physiology" as a branch of general popular education.

JOHN ANGELL.

MANCHESTER, *August*, 1873.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I. GENERAL VIEW OF THE SCHEME AND FUNCTIONS OF THE HUMAN BODY.

The Living Body compared with a Steam Engine at Work, 1—Physiology and Theology in Harmony, 2-3—Comparison of the Actions of a Living Body with those of a Steam Engine, continued, 4-6—Helmholtz's Estimate of Total Internal and External Mechanical Work of Living Man per day, 7-9—Dr. Frankland's Estimate of Mechanical equivalent of 20½ ounces of Oatmeal, 10—Difference between Living Body and Working Steam Engine, 12-13—Living Body Self-Repairing, 14-15—Change and Waste, 16—Proof of Development of Heat Force in the Living Body, 17-18—Of Mechanical Force, 19-20—Of Vital and Nervous Force, 21—Waste Processes, 22—Proofs of Waste, 23—Waste Increases with Work, 24—Diurnal Balance, 25—Hunger and Thirst, 26—Ingestion of Oxygen a Condition of Life, 27-28—Death, 29—Reproduction, 30—The Cognate Sciences, 31, ... Pages 9-22

CHAPTER II. GENERAL BUILD OF THE HUMAN BODY.

Divisions of the Human Body, 32—Head, 33—Trunk, 34—Thorax, 35-36—Cavity of Abdomen, 37—Hints for Lay Students, 38—The Extremities, 39-41—Transverse Section of a Limb, 42—Investing Membranes, 43—Blood-vessels, Nerves, and Absorbents, 44—Double tube theory of Structure of Animal Body, 45—Typical Vertebra, 46-47, ... Pages 22-31

CHAPTER III. THE SKELETON OR OSSEOUS SYSTEM—THE BONES AND LIGAMENTS, ... Pages 31-47

CHAPTER IV. CHEMICAL PRELIMINARIES.

Analysis of Human Body, 88—A Chemical or Ultimate Element, 89—The Organogens, 90—Oxygen, 91—Hydrogen, 92—Water, 93—Nitrogen, 94—Ammonia, 95—Atmospheric Air, 96—Carbon, 97—Carbonic Acid Gas, 98—Putrefaction, Decomposition, and Decay, 99-100—Incidental Elements, 101—Mineral Compounds, 102—Endosmosis, &c., 103—Diffusion of Liquids and Gases, 104—A Proximate Principle, 105—Albumen, 106—Fibrin, 107—Syntonin, 108—Casein, 109—Globulin, 110—Gelatin, 111—Chondrin, 112—Keratin, 113—Protoplasm (bioplasm), 114—Non-nitrogenous Principles, 115—The Amyloids, 116—Starch, 117—Dextrine and Gum, 118—Sugar, 119—Fats, 120—Organ and Organized Bodies, 121—Function, 122—Biology, 123—Anatomy, 124—Physiology and Pathology, 125—Histology, 126, ... Pages 47-59

CHAPTER V. HISTOLOGICAL PRELIMINARIES.

Epithelium, 127-131—Connective, Cellular, or Areolar Tissue, 132—White Fibrous Tissue, 133—Yellow Fibrous Tissue, 134—Adipose

Tissue, 135—Cartilage or Gristle, 136—Osseous Tissue, 137—Enamel, 138—Dentine or Tooth Tissue, 139—Crusta Petrosa, 140—Muscular Fibre, 141-144—Nervous Tissue, 145-151, . . Pages 59-74

CHAPTER VI. THE BLOOD.

The Blood, 152—Appearance and Properties of, 153—Magnified Blood, 154—Structural Character of, 155—General Composition of, 156—The Red Corpuscles, 157-158—Form and Size of Red Corpuscles in various animals, 159—Structure of Red Corpuscle, 160-161—Cause of Colour of Red Corpuscle, 162—Detection of Blood Stains, 163—Function of Red Corpuscle, 164—The Oxygen in Feeble Chemical Union with the Blood, 165—Transfusion, 166—White Corpuscles, 167-170—Liquor Sanguinis, 171-72—Coagulation of Blood, 173-175—Serum, 176—Serosity of Blood, 177—Magnified Coagulated Blood, 178-179—Cause of Coagulation, 180-182—Wounds after Death, 183—Conditions which Accelerate or Retard Coagulation, 184—Buffy Coat, 185—Cupped Appearance of Blood, 186—Gases in Blood, 187—Functions of Blood, 188—Gains and Losses of, 189, Pages 74-90

CHAPTER VII. CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD—THE HEART AND BLOOD-VESSELS.

General Purpose of the Circulation, 190—Description of, 191—Position and Size of the Heart, 192—Structure of, 193—The Auricles, 194-195—Ventricles, 196-197—Chordæ Tendineæ, 198—Movements of Heart, 199—Beating of, 200—Course of Blood through, 201-202—Valves of the Heart, 203-207—Pericardium, 208—Endocardium, 209—Sounds of Heart, 210—Arterial Pulse, 211-212—Nerves of the Heart, 213—Arteries, 214-216—Aorta, 217—Cœliac Axis, 218—Structure of Arteries, 219-224—Vaso-Motor Nerves, 225—Capillaries, 226—Veins, 227-228—The Valves of, 229—Venous Pulse, 230—The Vasa Vasorum, 231—Blushing, 232-233—Cause of Congestion, Cholera, &c., 234—Pallor, 235—Evidence of Circulation in Living Body, 236, ... Pages 91-115

CHAPTER VIII. RESPIRATION—THE LUNGS.

Part played by Oxygen in the Animal Economy, 237—Respiration, Definition of, 238—Changes in the Blood during Respiration, 239—Proofs of Waste through the Lungs, 240—Scheme of Structure of Lungs, 241-242—Pressure of Air in, 243—Course of the Air in Breathing, 244—The Air-tubes of the Lungs, 245-249—Infundibula, 250—Air Cells, 251—Cilia and Ciliated Epithelium, 252—Blood-vessels of Lungs, 253—Composition of Air, 254—Changes in Respired Air, 255—Ventilation, 256—Source of the Carbonic Acid, 257—Mechanical Movements of Respiration, 258—The Thorax, 259—Pleura, 260—Diaphragm or Midriff, 261—Ordinary and Extraordinary Inspiration, 262-263—Ordinary and Extraordinary Expiration, 264-265—Costal or Pectoral Respiration, 266—Diaphragmatic or Abdominal, 267—Snoring, 268—Sighing, 269—Sniffing, 270—Yawning, 271—Coughing, 272—Sneezing, 273—Sobbing, 274—Hiccough, 275—Crying and Laughing, 276—Frequency of Respiration, 277—Residual, Tidal or Breathing, Complemental, and Supplemental Air, 278-281—Capacity of Lungs, 282—Artificial Respiration, 283—Asphyxia (suffocation), 284-285—Respiratory Sounds, 286, Pages 116-135

CHAPTER IX. ANIMAL HEAT.

Animal Heat, 287—Effect of Exercise on and Amount of, 288—Regulation of, 289—Average Temperature, 290—Warm and Cold-Blooded Animals, 291, ... Pages 136–137

CHAPTER X. DIGESTION—ORGANS OF DIGESTION.

Digestion, Definition of, 292—General View of the Alimentary Canal, 293—General View of the Course of the Food and its Changes, 294-295—The Mouth, 296-297—Mastication or Chewing, 298—The Teeth, 299—Structure of, 300—Permanent and Milk Teeth (incisors, bicuspids, molars), 301—Insalivation, 302—Salivary Glands, 303—Saliva, 304—The Pharynx, 305—Œsophagus, 306—Deglutition (swallowing), 307-311—Drinking, 312—The Stomach, 313-316—Gastric follicles or Tubuli, 317—Gastric Juice, 318—Chymification (gastric digestion), 319—Chyme, 320—Artificial Digestion, 321—The Pylorus, 322—Large and Small Intestines, 323—Intestinal Digestion (chylification), 324—The Duodenum, 325—Jejunum, 326—Ileum, 327—Peritoneum, 328—Mesentery, 329—Cæcum, 330—Colon, 331—Rectum, 332—Intestinal Villi, 333, . . Pages 137-155

CHAPTER XI. FOOD AND NUTRITION.

Food, Definition of, 334—Classification of, 335-336—Digestibility of, 337—Relation of to Daily Loss, 338—Economical Admixture of, 339—Nutrition, 340, ... Pages 155–159

CHAPTER XII. THE LYMPHATICS, LACTEALS, AND THORACIC DUCT.

The Lymphatic or Absorbent System, 341—Thoracic Duct, 342—Receptaculum Chyli, 343—Lacteals, 344—Lymphatics, 345—Lymphatic Glands, 346—Mesenteric Glands, 347—The Lymph, 348—Chyle, 349, ... Pages 159–162

CHAPTER XIII. SECRETION AND EXCRETION—STRUCTURE OF GLANDS.

Secretion, Definition of, 350—Excretion, 351—A Gland, 352—Plan of Structure of Glands, 353-356—Classification of Glands, 357—Tubuli of, 358—Glandular Epithelium, 359—Glandular Ducts, 360-361—Vital Selective Force of, 362—Theory of Secretion, 363—The Liver, 364-368—The Ducts of, 369-372—Gall Bladder, 373—Portal Vein, 374—Hepatic Veins, 375—Hepatic Artery, 376—The Bile, 377—Glycogen, 378—Proof of Glycogenic Function of Liver, 379—Glucose, 380—Nerves of Liver, 381—Pancreas, 382—Pancreatic Duct, 383—Pancreatic Juice, 384—Salivary Glands, 385, Pages 162-173

CHAPTER XIV. EXCRETION. THE SKIN.

The Skin, 386-388—Cuticle, 389—Cutis, 390—Sudoriparous Glands, 391—The Perspiration, 392-393—The Urine, 394—Sebaceous Glands, 395—Absorption by the Skin, 396—Papillæ, 397—Tactile Corpuscles, 398—Compass Test of Sensibility, 399-400, . Pages 173-180

CHAPTER XV. THE KIDNEYS AND URINARY ORGANS,

The Kidneys and Urinary Organs, 401-403—The Medullary Substance, 404—Cortical Substance, 405—Circulation in Kidney, 406—The Purest Blood in the Body, 407—The Ureters, 408—The Bladder, 409—The Urine, 410, ... Pages 180-185

CHAPTER XVI. DUCTLESS GLANDS, . . . Page 186

CHAPTER XVII. ANIMAL MECHANICS—THE MUSCLES, TENDONS, JOINTS, LIGAMENTS, AND LEVERS.

Animal Mechanics, 413—The Muscles, 414-417—Tendons or Sinews, 418—Ligaments, 419—The Articular Cartilages, 420—Synovial Sacs, 421—The Joints, 422-428—Supination, 429—Pronation, 430—Levers, 431-435—The Erect Position of the Body in Standing, 436—Walking, 437—Running, 438—Jumping, 439, . . Pages 187-195

CHAPTER XVIII. THE ORGANS OF THE VOICE.

The Voice, 440-441—Speech, 443—The Larynx, 443-449—The Vocal Chords, 450-452—Pitch or Note, 453—Loudness of Voice, 454—Essentials to the Production of Voice, 455—Vowel Sounds, 456—Consonantal Sounds, 457, ... Pages 195-201

CHAPTER XIX.—THE SENSES AND THE ORGANS OF THE SENSES.

The Organs of the Senses, 458-459—Muscular Sense, 460—Touch, 461-462—The Tongue and Taste, 463—Smell, 464—The Nose, 465—Sound, 466—Hearing, 467-468—The Vestibule, 469—Semicircular Canals, 470—Membranous Labyrinth, 471—Otoconia, 472—Function of Labyrinth, 473—The Cochlea, 474-475—The Modus Operandi of Hearing, 476—Light, 477—Undulatory Theory of Light and Colour, 478-479—Complementary Colours, 480—Colour Blindness, 481—The Eye, 482-483—The Sclerotic Coat, 484—Cornea, 485—Choroid Coat, 486—Iris, 487—Aqueous Humour, 488—Crystalline Lens and Long and Short Sight, 489—Vitreous Humour, 490—The Retina, 491-492—The Blind Spot, 493-494—Bright Spot of Sömmering, 495—Duration of the Impression of Light, 496—Erect Vision, 497—Single Vision with two Eyes, 498—Double Vision with one Eye, 499—A Phosphene, 500—Purkinje's Figures, 501—The Adjustment of the Eye, 502—The Ciliary Muscle, 503—Muscles of the Eyeball, 504—Appendages of the Eye, 505—Eyebrows, 506—Eyelids, 507—Conjunctiva, 508—Lachrymal Glands, 509, Pages 202-222

CHAPTER XX. THE NERVOUS SYSTEM. INNERVATION.

The Nervous System, 510-511—Innervation, 512—Sensation, 513—The Brain, 514—The Cerebrum and its Function, 515-516—The Cerebellum, 517—The Pons Varolli, 518—The Cranial (cerebral) Nerves, 519—Medulla Oblongata, 520-522—The Spinal Cord, 523-528—The Membranes of, 529—Functions of, 530—Reflex Action, 531—The Spinal Nerves, 532—Injury or Irritation of, 533—The Sympathetic Nerve System, 534-535, ... Pages 222-232

APPENDIX.—Hints for the Dissection of a Rabbit, Ox's Eye, and Sheep's Brain; Extra Diagram of Thorax, and Government Science Questions, ... Pages 232-238

GLOSSARY, ... Pages 239-242

INDEX, ... Pages 243-252

ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SCHEME AND FUNCTIONS OF THE HUMAN BODY.

1. The Living Body compared with a Steam Engine at Work.—The body of a *living* man in many respects closely resembles that of a *steam engine* at *work*, differing from it chiefly in the greater variety, complexity, beauty, and perfection of its individual parts, and its scheme as a whole, just as its contriver and maker, *man*, differs in power and degree from the great Maker of the Universe.

2. Physiology and Theology in Harmony.—At the outset, to prevent all possible confusion, let it be distinctly understood that, though we shall frequently have cause to refer to the nature and the condition of the action of the *human mind*, we in no case intend, as not coming within the proper province of "physiology," to refer to the nature of the *human soul*, or its connections or relations with the human body.

In the opinion of the writer, as far as mere human knowledge and intellect are concerned, the nature of this connection is entirely a mystery: all attempts to investigate this divine, not human, problem have hitherto not only failed to present any light on the wonderful mystery, but have entirely failed even to show us *how*, by any *scientific* or *philosophical* methods with which we are acquainted, we shall be able to acquire such knowledge.

In fact, we at the present time are not only without such knowledge, in the sense in which the term is used in *science*, but are also utterly helpless as to the *method* by which such knowledge is to be *philosophically* acquired or built up. The writer of this little treatise would even go so far as to express it to be his opinion that the Almighty, in creating man, withheld from him, as he has also withheld from him the *power* of prophecy and other Divine gifts, the faculty of acquiring during this life any true knowledge of the nature of the *human soul.*

3. Some writers, it is true, have endeavoured to support, on the basis of *physiological* argument, the theory of the utter *extinction* and *annihilation* of man by *death.* With this view the writer of this little book has no sympathy whatever. In any case the proposition, being incapable of *scientific proof,* must remain in the region of pure *hypothesis.* To the present writer the fact that the Great Creator of all things has endowed man, as a part of his nature and his *mental being,* with the fundamental faculty or the natural sentiment of religion, in consequence of which mankind, even in the absence of true knowledge, has at all times and during all ages *practised* religion, *true* or *false*—has at all times cultivated a belief in an existence *future* to death—seems (to the writer) distinctly to point to, and make as eminently reasonable, the belief in the truth of the *future existence* or the *immortality* of man, as the *structure* of the *heart* and *great blood-vessels,* and the arrangement of the *valves,* rendered reasonable to the great physiologist (Harvey) the fact of the *circulation of the blood.*

In any case, the fact that the theory of our "future life" is compatible with all the promptings of our religious, moral, imaginative and poetical faculties, that it cannot but tend to elevate and purify our lives, and render them less selfish, is a sufficiently reasonable and *practical* argument, in the absence of all *scientific* proof to the contrary, why this theory, coinciding as it does with the doctrines of Christian Revelation, should be adopted as the basis of our practical rule of life. Be this, however, as it may, the writer having frankly, and he trusts respectfully, expressed his opinions on the subject of the "future existence of man," hopes that he will not be deemed responsible for the action of those who, with a very limited knowledge of "physiology," and a still more limited knowledge of things in general, may attempt to *extort*, or rather *distort*, from statements in this little work arguments subversive of this theory, or of the belief in the existence of the human soul.

4. **Comparison of the Actions of a Living Body with those of a Steam Engine continued.**—What, then, is a steam engine? and in what respects, it may be asked, can two such apparently dissimilar objects as a *steam engine* and the *body* of a *living man* resemble each other?

A *steam engine* is a complex structure, by means of which—

1st. *Chemical force*, stored up in certain materials (the *fuel*), is converted into *heat* force.

2nd. *Heat force* is converted into *mechanical force.*

3rd. The *mechanical force* is made to do the work desired by the designer and constructor of the engine.

The *real force* which drives the steam engine is *not* the *steam*, but the *heat.* The steam is merely the medium or agent by means of which the heat is most conveniently brought to bear upon the *solid* parts of its machinery.

5. For the construction of a steam engine we require—

(1.) A *grate* or *furnace*, in which the *fuel* is burnt or *oxidized*—that is, made to combine with the oxygen of the air, so that its *chemical force* may be converted into *heat force.* The grate or furnace corresponds to the *lungs* and *capillaries.*

(2.) A *boiler* containing water, placed where it shall receive the utmost possible heat from the *combustion* taking place in the *furnace.* All *heat* which does not pass into the *water* in the boiler is so much *lost force*, and the *fuel* consumed in generating it is so much *lost fuel.*

(3.) A *cylinder*, *piston*, and *piston-rod*, which correspond in function with those of the *bones*, *ligaments*, *muscles*, and *tendons* of the living body.

The *cylinder* is a large hollow cylindrical vessel connected with the boiler by a steam pipe.

The *piston* is a circular flat disc of metal, fitting air-tight into, and capable of being pushed *up* and down, the cylinder.

The *piston-rod* is a strong metallic rod attached to the *upper* or *outer* part of the *piston.*

When the *water* in the boiler has received the necessary quantity of heat, it expands with enormous force to nearly 1,700 times its original bulk or volume. The capacity of the boiler being fixed and limited, it is unable to contain this additional *bulk* or *volume* of expanded water (steam) which thus *forces* its way, or rather is *driven by the heat* into the *cylinder*, pushing the *piston* and *piston-rod* before it, thus producing the available *mechanical force* for the development of which the steam engine has been set up.

(4.) The *steam governor*, which is a mechanical arrangement by which the quantity of *working steam*—that is, the quantity of steam delivered into the cylinder—is *regulated* according to the resistance of the engine or the *work to be done.* That is, if *more power* is required because *more work* is to be done, then more *working steam* is admitted to drive the piston in the cylinder. If work is taken off so that *less work* is to be done, less *working steam* is admitted,—the fuel consumed being regulated accordingly by the man in charge of the engine.

The *steam governor* of the steam engine, together with the *stoker* or man who attends to the furnace, corresponds to the *sympathetic* or *organic nervous system* of the living man, which regulates or duly adjusts the action of the *digestive*, *respiratory*, *circulatory*, and *muscular systems* with regard to each other; so that in health they should not work *too fast* or *too slow* for each other—that is, that the organs of digestion should not make too much or too little blood, or the heart drive it too slowly or too rapidly through the system, or the lungs oxidize it too highly or too feebly, or the tissues appropriate it too quickly.

(5.) *Various mechanical contrivances*, not here necessary to describe, by means of which the *mechanical force*, originating as previously explained in the first instance out of the *heat*, is *distributed* and *directed* so as to accomplish the various ends for which the engine was designed. These parts also, like the piston, piston-rod, &c., thus used for *transmitting* and *directing* mechanical force and movement, may also be compared with the *bones*, *muscles*, *ligaments*, and *tendons* of the living body.

6. The amount of work expressed in *mechanical units* done by a well constructed and well managed steam engine (allowing for loss by friction, &c.) is in the ratio of the *fuel consumed*. That is, roughly speaking, for *twice* the *fuel* consumed, *twice* the *mechanical power* should be developed, and *twice* the *work* be capable of being done.

7. According to Helmholtz, the celebrated German physicist, the total *internal* mechanical work of a living man is not less than about 715,000 foot pounds per day, of which 500,500 foot pounds are expended in the *mechanical* work of the *circulation*, 78,650 foot pounds in carrying on the *mechanical* work of *respiration*, and 135,850 foot pounds in the performance of the *mechanical* work of other *internal* processes of the living body.

8. Helmholtz also estimates the *external* work—that is, the *external* resistance overcome by an active, vigorous *working* man per day—at about 715,000 foot pounds.

9. Every 2¼ lbs. of good coal burnt in feeding a good steam engine should be capable of producing about 2,145,000 foot pounds of mechanical force; thus the mechanical work producible by the combustion of one kilogramme, or about 2¼ lbs. of coal, equals the mechanical work of *three* men for a whole day.

10. Dr. Frankland has estimated that 20½ ounces of *oatmeal* (at a cost of 3½ pence), oxidized in the body of a small living man (weighing 140 lbs.), would enable him

to raise himself 10,000 feet high (as in ascending a mountain); or, in other words, would enable him to expend 1,400,000 foot pounds of *mechanical force.*

11. The steam engine is thus an instrument by which *heat* and *mechanical force* are developed out of the *chemical force* stored up in the *fuel* consumed in working it.

12. Difference between the Living Body and a Working Steam Engine.—The *living human body* is, however, a far higher and more complex structure, in which a certain amount of chemical material (the food) is daily *consumed* and *oxidized,* the chemical force evolved during the combustion of which is not simply converted into the ordinary forms of *heat* and *mechanical* (muscular) *force,* but *also* into the various forms of *nervous, vital,* and *mental force.*

13. In the *living body,* as in the case of the *steam engine,* the *quantity of force* developed depends on the quantity of food profitably consumed (that is digested, assimilated, and oxidized). Where more food is *consumed* more force *is developed.* And where *more work,* either *brain* or *muscular,* is to be done, *more food* must be consumed to supply the requisite force.

14. The Living Body Self-Renewing and Self-Repairing. But the *living human body,* viewed as a mere machine, *differs* from that of a steam engine, not merely in the greater number and higher nature of the forces developed by the *oxidization* of its *food* and *tissues,* but also in its *self-reparative* and its *reproductive power.*

The steam engine *works* and *wastes* or *wears* itself away, and, therefore, soon requires *repair* from external sources, or *mending* by external agents.

The *living human body,* on the contrary, requires no such external aid, but during health is *self*-reparative, constantly wasting away, constantly expending both *force* and *substance,* yet neither losing power nor weight, that is, preserves from day to day its *average weight* and *strength.*

15. This power of *self-repair* is characteristic only of animate beings. No construction of man, however ingenious, has ever possessed this property. No man has yet *designed*, much less *constructed*, a clock or other instrument which though always at work, yet should never wear out, or which should *repair* itself or *renew* its parts as rapidly as they wear away; yet this is what occurs in all cases of healthy animal life.

16. Change and Waste. The living body is the seat of actions far more numerous and incessant than those of any mere *inanimate* object however complex.

Even during sleep, *chemical*, *vital*, *nervous* and *mechanical* movements are continually proceeding. The blood is ever *circulating*, the heart ever *beating*, the arteries ever *pulsating*, the chest ever *throbbing*, the oxygen of the air "the sweeper of the living organism, but the lord of the dead body," as it has eloquently been described by Professor Huxley, is ever *combining* with and *destroying* the tissues of the body. In fact, during life there is continuous action with its corollary—*constant waste.*

The explanation of the nature and extent to which these processes of continual *change* and *waste* are carried on in the living body forms one of the leading objects of the science of "Animal Physiology."

17. Proof of the development of Heat Force in the living body. Every boy who has played at snow-ball knows that, if he grasp a piece of ice or a small quantity of snow at freezing temperature (0° Centigrade) in the palm of his hand, it will speedily *melt.* He also knows that the *heat*—the *force* by which this effect of liquifaction is produced—is derived from the body. Heat, therefore, is normally *developed* in the *living* body.

What takes place with respect to *ice* held in the hand, would take place with regard to *ice* placed in contact with any other part of the *living* body. Supposing the entire body to be encased in *ice* at *freezing point* (0° Centigrade), and the melted ice (the liquid) to be carefully and accurately *weighed*, the *quantity of heat* given out from the surface of the body might be ascertained with great precision. Physicists thus ascertain by a process of *calorimetry* the *quantity* of heat contained in a body of given weight and temperature.

18. But, in addition to the *heat* given off from the *surface* of the body, a large quantity of the heat developed in the *living* body is also carried off by the *breath,* which as all know is considerably warmer than the air of cold or temperate climates. A knowledge of the origin of "*Animal heat,*" and the conditions under which it is developed and distributed through the system, is also included in the science of Animal Physiology, which thus includes an elementary knowledge of chemistry, and of "*heat,*" as a branch of "Physics."

The principal *organs* concerned in the development and regulation of the *animal heat* are the *lungs, capillaries,* and the *skin.*

19. **Proof of the development of Mechanical Force in the living body.** Throw a stone up through the air by means of the hand and arm. The *movement* of the stone is a *mechanical* movement, and the *mechanical* force by which it is effected is developed within the living body. At every step we take in walking, we *raise* the whole *weight* of the body; every time we raise a limb or lift a weight, we *generate* and *expend* mechanical force. *Mechanical force* must therefore be abundantly developed in the bodies of living men.

20. The *development* and *direction* of the mechanical force generated by living beings is effected, as previously stated, mainly by *organs* termed respectively *muscles, tendons, bones* and *ligaments.* The branch of Physiology which specially treats on this subject is termed "*Animal Mechanics.*"

21. **Special proof that vital and nervous force are developed** in the body of a living man is quite unnecessary to every thinking man. That *vital, nervous,* and mental force are *generated* or developed in the body of living man is proved by every sensation, thought, and *emotion* of which he is conscious. That every such mental phenomenon is due to the *nervous force* generated by the

chemical action of the *oxygen* of the air on the blood or the tissues—the special organs concerned in producing these phenomena—and the conditions under which they are produced form together so many *natural problems* which it is the object of Human Physiology to solve.

This branch of the study is embraced under the head of the *nervous system*. The chief organs of the nervous *system* are the *brain*, the *spinal cord*, the *cerebro-spinal* nerves, and the *sympathetic* nerves.

22. Waste Processes. But in addition to the *force* developed and expended or *lost*, *substance* is, in the production of this force, being incessantly *burnt*, disintegrated, and evolved from the *living* animal body, thus producing the continued *loss of substance* or *waste* previously referred to.

To remove this *waste* or *dead* matter with sufficient rapidity from the system is the office or function of special *organs* termed the *absorbents*, and of the organs of *excretion*, the latter including the *lungs*, *skin*, and *kidneys*, &c.; the duty of which has been compared with that of the *sewers* and *scavengers* in properly organized large towns.

The *waste* substance of the tissues leaves the system in form of *carbonic acid gas*, of *water*, and of *urea;* the latter substance (*urea*) after leaving the body becomes further decomposed into *carbonic acid gas* and *ammonia*. In addition to the above, the *excretions* also contain certain *saline compounds* or salts.

23. Simple Proofs of Waste.

(*a*.) Bring any bright highly-polished cold steel or metal article into contact with the finger or any other part of the body. It will immediately become *dimmed*, because of the deposit of the *perspiration* which incessantly escapes from all parts of the *skin*. Ten thousand to twenty thousand grains weight and upwards are thus thrown off the body daily.

(*b*.) Breathe through a *weighed* quantity of clear transparent *lime water* (a chemical test for *carbonic acid gas*). It instantly becomes *white* and *turbid*. After breathing through it for a short time, *re-weigh;* it will now have become *heavier;* thus proving that the living body continually *loses carbonic acid gas* in the act of breathing. A large quantity of *aqueous vapour* also passes off from the lungs during the process of breathing.

Twelve thousand to twenty thousand grains in weight of *carbonic acid gas*, and five thousand grains and upwards of *water* in the form of *aqueous vapour*, are thus lost per day from the body of living man.

During *cold* weather thick *clouds* of condensed vapour are frequently seen rising from the *mouths* and *skins* of horses who have been running violently; this is simply so much of the *waste matter* referred to.

24. Waste increases with Work.—Let a living man be *weighed* immediately after a meal; let him then sit still for three or four hours, after which let him be *re-weighed*, he *not* having taken any refreshment in the interval. On *re-weighing* he will be found to have *lost weight*, thus proving that during the interval he was *losing substance.*

Let the same experiment be repeated after another meal, the temperature being the same, but let him in the interval *work* hard, or take a very long, rapid walk. On being *re-weighed* he will be found to have *lost* a very perceptibly *greater* weight than on the occasion of the previous experiment during *rest;* thus proving that *increased exertion* brings with it *increased loss* of substance.

A smith or a navvie thus on ordinary days, when *working*, loses more bodily weight and substance than he does on Sundays when *resting*.

25. Diurnal balance.—But if a healthy living man be *weighed* at about the same time of the day, and under similar circumstances with regard to *temperature*, *work* and *food*, day after day for several days in succession, he will be found to vary very little in weight from one day to the other. The body must thus be "*diurnally balanced*," and this *diurnal balancing* must therefore be effected by the food *diurnally* ingested.

The body of a living man is thus a highly complex *organized* structure, which constantly *generates* and *expends* nervous and mechanical force, which *generates* and *loses* heat, and which consequently suffers an *incessant loss* of substance *consumed in supplying* the forces thus generated and expended, and which must therefore be sustained by the periodical supply of suitable *organic* matter ingested in the form of *food.*

If a healthy active man do a given amount of physical work daily, he will require a certain definite amount of food per day to preserve his *diurnal physiological balance.* If he *greatly* increase the quantity of *work* done per day without increasing the quantity of *food* he takes per day, he will become *thinner* and *lighter*—that is, his diurnal bodily loss will *exceed* his diurnal bodily gain. Again, if he continue to take the same quantity of food as before, while he greatly reduces the quantity of work he does per day, either his body will become *heavier*—that is, he will increase in *bulk,* or the unused food will pass out of his system *undigested* as *excrementitious* matter.

26. Hunger and Thirst.—In order to compel the *living* being to attend with sufficient promptness and regularity to the supply of new matter in the form of food and drink necessary to keep up the *diurnal balance,* and enable the body to generate the *forces* necessary to the carrying on of its functions, and the repairing of its tissues, *two imperious* sensations, *hunger* and *thirst,* are established, which, when operating in their full vigour, irresistibly compel him (where physically possible) to satisfy the cravings of his system. So irresistible are these cravings that savages sometimes charge their stomachs with *clay* and other indigestible and useless matter in order to assuage the intensity of their *hunger.*

27. The Ingestion of Oxygen a condition of Life.—But as the development of the *vital* and other *forces* generated in the living body depends upon the chemical action of the *oxygen* of the air upon the *blood,* the *food,* or the *tissues,* it is necessary that, in addition to the food material ingested for the *repair* of the system, large quantities of *oxygen gas* shall be constantly ingested into the system.

It has been estimated that 800 lbs. of *oxygen gas,* and consequently about five times that weight of atmospheric air are passed through the *lungs* of an ordinary working man in the course of one year. (See *Organs of Respiration.*)

28. When the body ceases to be supplied with *oxygen,* the *brain,* the *heart,* and the *lungs* cease to act, and death from *asphyxia* or *suffocation* ensues.

29. **Death, Local, Molecular, and Somatic.**—When the body of an animal *performs* its various *functions* it is said to *live,* or be in a state of *life;* when such a body entirely *ceases* to perform its various functions, it is said to be *dead.*

Every animal is endowed at its birth with a constitution, in consequence of which it is, under favourable, that is *normal,* circumstances, capable of passing through a systematic series of cycles of change at the termination of which it, *no longer possessing the power* of continuing to develop the *vital* forces necessary to its further existence, *ceases to live*—or in other words, dies a *natural,* and probably *painless* death, from pure natural exhaustion of vitality.

This constitutes death from *old age.* From misconduct, and breach of natural law, in most cases more or less unavoidable, because of ignorance of physiological law, or of the artificial necessities of modern civilization, probably not one in ten-thousand *dies a natural death*—that is, lives out the full period of his proper natural existence, but *dies* by accident (injury) or by *disease.*

Death, however, does not occur *simultaneously* through every part of the body. The *tissues* of the man continue to live, and even to be nourished for a short time after the *man* himself is dead. Thus the *hair* may possibly continue to grow a short time after death. The *muscles* also may be made to contract by *electrical stimulus* for a short time after the man is dead, thus showing that the *muscular tissues* are not dead.

When the *abdomen* of a sheep which has been bled to death, or even decapitated, is opened shortly after death, the *peristaltic* movements of the stomach and intestines, probably stimulated by the action of the air, may be observed proceeding feebly; thus again showing that the *life* of the *tissues* may for a short time *survive* that of the body as a whole.

The *death* of the body as a whole has been termed *Somatic death* (from Greek *soma*, a body). *Somatic death*, formerly described as *systemic death*, is death consequent on the *cessation of the circulation*. The cessation of the circulation can only be brought about by the *failure* of the action of the *brain*, the *heart*, or the *lungs*. These three organs, or centres of life, were therefore designated by *Bichat* the *tripod of life*.

When, as not unfrequently happens, a part of the body, as a finger or a limb, suffers injury by accident or disease, in consequence of which its circulation and consequent *nutrition* is arrested, it *dies*, or undergoes *mortification*, and sloughs away. Such death is therefore termed *local death*, which implies the death of a *part* of the body in contradistinction to the death of the whole. (See *Nutrition*.) Birds *moult* their feathers, and deer *cast* their antlers through *local death*, caused by arrest of nutrition.

But it has already been repeatedly shown that the *vital* and *other forces* of the body—or in other words, *its life*, is continually sustained by the disintegration, oxidizing, burning, and consequent *death* of the *molecules* (minute constituent particles) of the tissues taking place *at all points* in the *living* body. To this kind of *death*, therefore, the term *molecular death* is applied, which implies that kind of death which is perpetually taking place among the living *particles* all through the body, the death and destruction of which (through the agency of the oxygen) determines the origin of the *animal* heat, and of the muscular, nervous, and other forces of life.

Molecular death taking place all through the system has sometimes been described as one kind of *general* death, and has thus been confounded with *somatic death,* which is also another form of *general* death.

30. Reproduction.—To the power of reproduction, so characteristic of animal life, by which life is given to successive races of beings, who inherit the *structure* and *properties* of their *parents* and predecessors, the limits of the present treatise will prevent little more than allusion.

31. Cognate Sciences.—It will be seen from the foregoing statements that a sound knowledge of Animal Physiology implies a greater or less knowledge of *Chemistry, Mechanics,* and *Physics.* It also requires a knowledge of so much *Anatomy* as shall enable the student to understand the general *structure* of the Animal Body, and of so much *Histology* as shall give him a clear knowledge of the *Microscopic structure* of the tissues. Most important light is thrown on the principles of physiology by the study of *Pathology.*

CHAPTER II

GENERAL BUILD OF THE HUMAN BODY.

32. Divisions of the Human Body.—For the purposes of general description, the human body may be divided into *head, trunk,* and *extremities* (the arms and legs). The human body is, speaking generally, *bi-laterally symmetrical*—that is, it consists of two similarly shaped and equal halves, right and left, each of which is made up of similar parts or *organs.*

Before entering on the more *minute* study of the "house we live in," it is desirable to take "a run of the house;" the student should therefore endeavour, in the first instance, to obtain a clear idea of the "General Build of the Human Body."

33. The Head, which forms the upper part of the *body,* contains—the *brain* or organ of *thought, sensation,* and of the *emotions*—the organs of the *chief senses*—viz., those of sight, smell, taste, and hearing, and the ***medulla oblongata***, or cranial portion of the central nervous axis. (See fig. 1.)

That portion of the ***head*** which contains the brain is termed the ***cranium***, the remaining portion, the ***face***. The mouth and nostrils open into the *pharynx;* the ducts from the ***salivary glands*** open into the mouth.

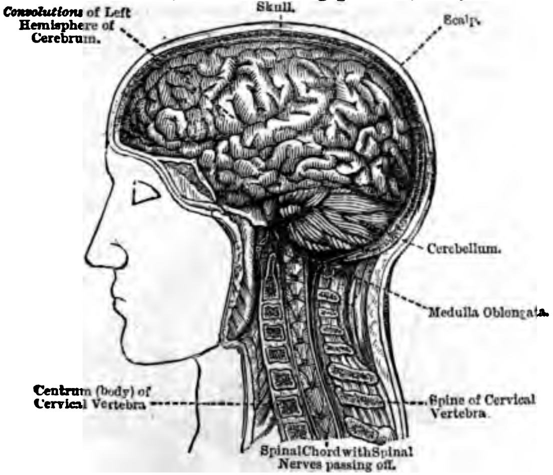

Convolutions of Left Hemisphere of Cerebrum.
Skull.
Scalp.
Cerebellum.
Medulla Oblongata.
Centrum (body) of Cervical Vertebra
Spine of Cervical Vertebra.
SpinalChord withSpinal Nerves passing off.

Fig. 1. Side view of Brain and connection of Spinal Cord.

34. The Trunk, which forms the large mass of the *body*, may, in order to facilitate description, be further divided into an ***upper*** part, termed the ***thorax*** or chest, and a ***lower*** region, termed the ***abdomen***. (See fig. 2.) The ***thoracic*** and ***abdominal*** cavities are separated from each other by a large thin ***muscular*** partition, termed the ***diaphragm***, or midriff.

35. The Thorax or chest contains the *thoracic cavity*, in which are lodged the heart, lungs, trachea, and portions of several of the larger blood-vessels (the aorta, vena cava, and pulmonary vessels), and the *dorsal* portions of the ***spinal cord***, and of the ***bony axis*** by which it is protected, also a portion of the ***œsophagus*** (gullet or food-pipe), and the *thoracic duct*, and of the *sympathetic* or ganglionic-nerve-system, not shown in the diagram.

The *spinal cord*, which is a sort of continuation of the *brain* down the middle of the back-bone, transmits nervous impressions *to* and mental commands *from* the brain to the various parts of the body. It also acts as an *independent* centre of motion or *reflex* action.

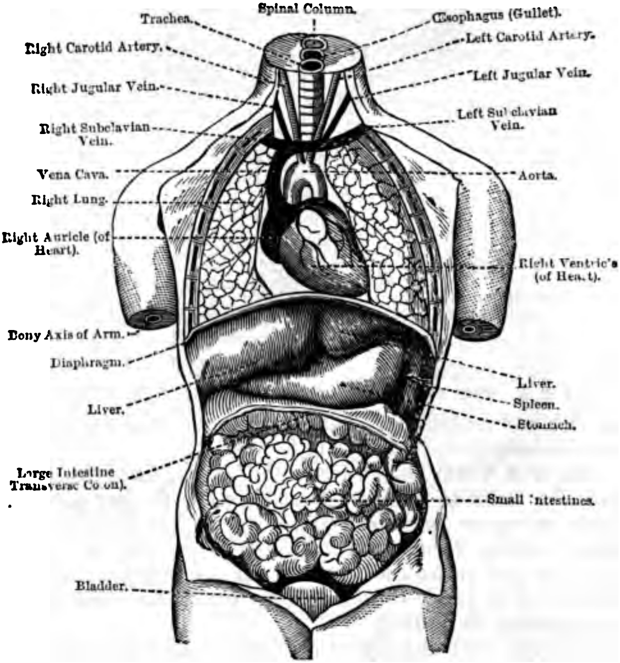


Fig. 2. Front view of the Organs of the Trunk.

The *walls* of the thorax are strengthened for the more secure protection of their *visceral* contents by a bony cage-work, consisting of the ribs, the dorsal portion of the back-bone, and the breast-bone. The *sternum* (breast-bone) and the front portions of the ribs (the *cut ends* of which are seen) are supposed to be removed in fig. 2, in order to expose the contained organs.

The *cavity* of the thorax contains the chief *blood-purifying* and *blood-circulating* organs.

36. Transverse Section of the Thorax.—The following diagram sufficiently explains the structure of the *thorax* and *its contents*, as displayed by a section across the *heart* and *lungs* perpendicular to the vertebral column (back-bone), the outer integument and layer of subcutaneous fat having been removed.

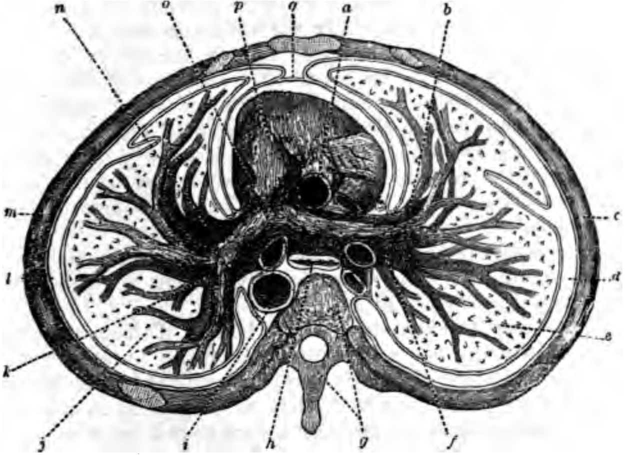


Fig 3. Transverse Section of the Thorax.

a, Aorta (ascending). *b*, Right Pulmonary Vein. *c*, Right Rib. *d*, Interval between two Surfaces of Right Pleura. *e*, Right Lung. *f*, Right Bronchus *g*, Vertebra. *h*, Œsophagus *i*, Aorta (descending). *j*, Left Lung. *k*, Left Bronchus. *l*, Left Pleura. *m*, Left Rib. *n*, Left Pulmonary Vein. *o*, Pulmonary Artery. *p*, Heart. *q*, Pericardium.

37. The Cavity of the Abdomen, situated immediately *below* the *diaphragm*, contains the *liver*, the *stomach*, the large and small *intestines*, and the *bladder*, also the *lumbar* portion of the back-bone and spinal cord, the *pancreas*, the *spleen*, and the *kidneys*, not shown in fig. 1. The cavity of the abdomen thus contains the principal *blood-forming* organs.

38. **Hints for Lay Students of Physiology.**—The young student should learn quickly to distinguish between the terms *body* and *trunk*. He should also make himself thoroughly familiar with the *forms* of the various organs, and the *positions* they occupy in the *living* body. He should study and draw the various physiological diagrams just as he would study a geographical map, and should always, where possible, avail himself of the opportunity of studying the actual organs they represent in the bodies of animals displayed by the butcher in his shop. In all cases he must make himself thoroughly *familiar* with each subject, especially with its *nomenclature* (technical names), before he proceeds to the study of the next, or he will make his work *needlessly difficult*. He should also bear in mind that after once carefully reading the description of a particular organ, observation or examination of the organ itself will give more *real* knowledge than many hours of laborious reading. He should also bear in mind that in the bodies of the sheep, or of the pig, or even the rabbit (commodities of common food), he has the means of securing nearly all the opportunities for accurate observation required for the sound study of animal physiology.

Of course, the structure of the bodies of these animals differs in many respects from that of the human body; notwithstanding this, it is easy, with the aid their study affords, supplemented with that of diagrams, to acquire in a most interesting manner a very sound knowledge of the *functions* of the *human body*, and of the general principles of *Animal Physiology*.

39. **The Extremities** or limbs are attached by an *upper* and a *lower girdle* of bones, externally, to the trunk. They consist essentially of *solid* fleshy or *muscular* (contractile) organs, and contain no *cavities* similar to those of the head and trunk.

The *upper* limbs or arms, which are terminated by the hands, possess great power of mobility—they are chiefly organs of *motion* and *prehension*. Their structure will be explained more fully in describing the *skeleton* or bony framework of the system.

The *lower* limbs or legs, which are terminated by the feet, are, in the human being, much larger and more powerfully built than the *upper* limbs. Their chief *functions* are those of *support* and *locomotion*.

The greater length, size, and strength of the lower limbs of man afford so many anatomical and physiological proofs that the *erect* position of man during walking is his *natural*, and not, as has been insinuated, his merely *acquired* position.

40. The terminal expansions (the feet) of the lower limbs resemble, in *general plan* and *structure*, those of the hands, but differ chiefly in being *less mobile* and less perfect as *sensory* and *prehensile* organs. Their less prehensile power mainly results from the fact that the bones of the great toes are not *opposable* to the bones of the remaining toes or of the instep; whereas the bones of the thumbs are readily opposable to the bones of the other fingers or to the bones of the palms of the hands.

Though in general the degree of manipulative power and skill possessed by the feet is many degrees inferior to that possessed by the hands, yet the effect of practice and training in augmenting the power of the former is most wonderful. The writer recollects, on one occasion in the picture gallery at Brussels, being astounded at the facility of execution and power of handling the brush and the pencil shown by one of the artists then painting in the gallery. This gentleman, who was entirely deficient of *both* arms, executed most charming copies of the leading works in the gallery, "handling" his panels, his canvas, his pencils, and his pigments, exclusively by means of his legs, feet, and toes.

41. The *limbs* consist essentially of *bony axes*, surrounded by large masses or bundles of *fleshy fibre*, by which they are moved. They also contain *whitish*, *silky*-looking cords or threads, the *nerves*—the "telegraph wires"—by which the command and the power to move are trans-

mitted, or as it were telegraphed, to the muscle, which thus becomes the obedient servant of the *brain*.

The limbs are also supplied with large blood-vessels (arteries and veins), by which they are furnished with the blood necessary for nutrition or *self-repair*, which has been previously described as the grand triumph of *living* over *art structure*.

The large *blood-vessels* and the principal *nerves* of a limb take the direction of, and are situated for protection, near its bony axis.

The general structure of a limb may be well studied by means of the leg of a fowl or a rabbit, even after it has been served up at the dinner table. The *tendons*, the *ligaments*, and the *fasciæ*, however, become more or less gelatinous during the process of cooking.

42. Transverse Section of a Limb.—If a *limb*, say the leg, were cut *transversely* through its middle—that is, perpendicularly to its general length—the student would observe, commencing from its exterior—

a. A thin circular coating or integument, the *skin*.
b. A circular layer of fat (the layer of subcutaneous fat).
c. A large mass of red flesh, consisting of *bundles* of *muscular fibre*, each bundle having its own coat or sheath, the whole mass also being surrounded by its own smooth shining sheath or *fascia*.
d. A central hollow, more or less cylindrical, bony axis, the interior being either empty or filled with medullary matter (marrow).
e. Two or three large blood-vessels and nerve-trunks, situated close to the bony axis.

All the structures here indicated may be readily seen in an ordinary leg of mutton, as sold by the butcher.

43. Investing Membranes.—The *exterior* of the body is surrounded by the skin or outer integument, which consists of *two* layers—an outer *bloodless* and an inner *vascular* and *sensory* layer.

At the mouth the skin enters the *interior* of the body, and its outer layer undergoing some modifications, it becomes *mucous* membrane, which lines the *open* cavities in the body.

The *closed* cavities are lined by *serous* membranes—so called from the fluid which they secrete and by which they are moistened.

44. Blood-Vessels, Nerves, Absorbents, and Glands.—For the *general course and distribution* of the blood-vessels, the nerves, the *absorbents* or *lymphatics* (organs which absorb or remove from the system the used up, or partially used up, materials from the body), and the various *secretory* and *excretory glands* (organs by which substances are elaborated and impurities are eliminated from the blood), the student is referred to the *special diagrams* illustrating these portions of the system.

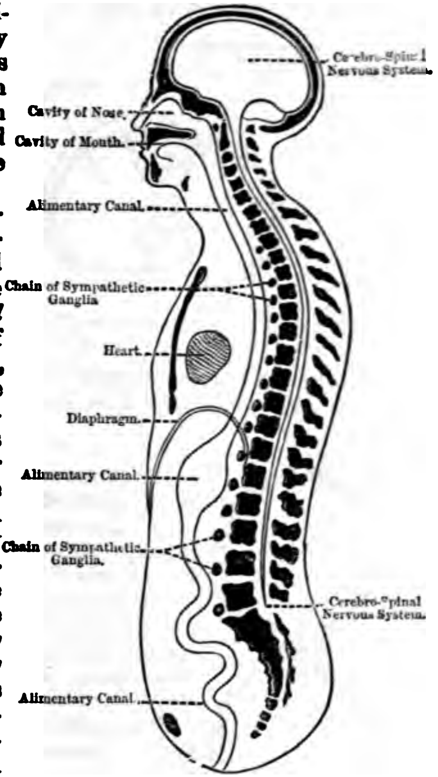


Fig. 4. Theoretic Longitudinal Section of Human Body, showing Dorsal and Ventral Tube. (After Huxley.)

The section is taken *perpendicularly* through the *Median* plane, and shows the *dorsal* (neural) tube containing the dorsal chamber of the skull and the spinal canal, the cut surfaces of the skull and 33 vertebra, and the *ventral* (haemal) tube in front of the Vertebral Column, containing the Heart, Lungs, Alimentary Canal with cavities of Mouth and Nose, the *Sympathetic Nervous System* consisting of a *double chain of Ganglia*, and other organs.

45. Double-tube Theory of Structure of Animal Body.—According to the theory now generally adopted by physiologists, the *body* of a *vertebrate* (back-boned) animal consists essentially of a *double-tube*, the *walls* of the tubes being united, but their *cavities* separated by the bodies of the vertebræ.

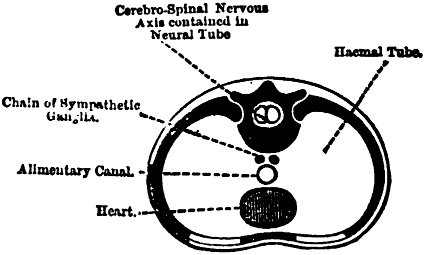

Cerebro-Spinal Nervous Axis contained in Neural Tube
Haemal Tube.
Chain of Sympathetic Ganglia.
Alimentary Canal.
Heart.

Fig. 5. Theoretic Transverse Section of the Human Body showing Dorsal and Ventral Tube. (After Huxley.)

The *posterior* or *upper* tube is termed the *dorsal* or *neural* tube or canal. It contains the *brain* and *spinal cord* (the cerebro-spinal nervous system).

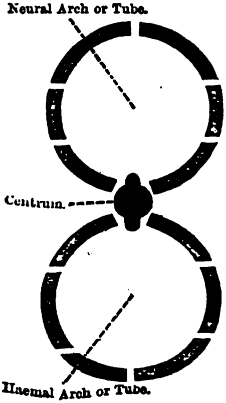


Fig. 6. Typical Vertebra. The different Segments of the arches represent (typically) various extensions and processes of the Vertebra.

The anterior or lower tube or canal is termed the *ventral* or *hæmal* tube. The *hæmal* or *ventral* canal includes the face from the eyes downwards (the mouth and nose forming a double inlet), the *heart, lungs, alimentary canal*, and other *blood-preparing* organs, and the *sympathetic nervous system*, and other organs.

The *double-tube* is made up of a series of *segments*, termed *vertebræ*, which are built up or super-posed, the one on top of the other.

46. The *theoretical typical vertebra* (see fig. 6) is supposed to consist of *two* bony arches, rings or hoops, connected by a *body* or *centrum*. The one is intended to contain a portion of the nervous system, and

is therefore termed the *neural* hoop or arch (from Gr. *neuron,* nerve); the lower hoop is intended for the protection of a portion of the *vascular* system, and is therefore termed the *hæmal* hoop (from Gr. *haima,* blood).

47. It is further supposed that the *skull* consists of four greatly modified vertebræ, in which the *neural* (dorsal) *arches* or hoops are greatly enlarged; also, that the abdominal and thoracic cavities are more or less enclosed by *vertebræ,* greatly *modified* by the addition of ribs (pleurapophyses), &c., which are regarded as mere extensions of the *hæmal* or *ventral* hoops. The *pelvis,* which bounds the lower end of the *ventral* tube, is also regarded as consisting of *modified* vertebræ.

CHAPTER III.

THE SKELETON OR OSSEOUS SYSTEM—THE BONES AND LIGAMENTS.

48. **The Skeleton** (from Gr. *skello,* I dry up) is the hard bony framework of the body. It consists of 200 or upwards of separate *bones,* united together by means of *cartilages* and *ligaments.* It, like the body, consists of *head, trunk,* and *extremities.* (See fig. 7.)

The difference in the number of the bones, as estimated by different writers, arises from the fact, that many of the bones are compound, consisting of several parts, which in early life are quite distinct from each other, but which later in life become more or less connected, so as to form single bones.

The student should make himself thoroughly familiar with the general plan and structure of the *skeleton,* and with the *names, positions,* and *shapes* of its various bones, since the general direction, and the *names* of the bones, determine the direction and the names of a large number of the blood-vessels, nerves, muscles, &c., to which they are adjacent. The whole of this may be *well* and *pleasantly* taught to a class of students, of from twelve or thirteen years of age or upwards, with the aid of a

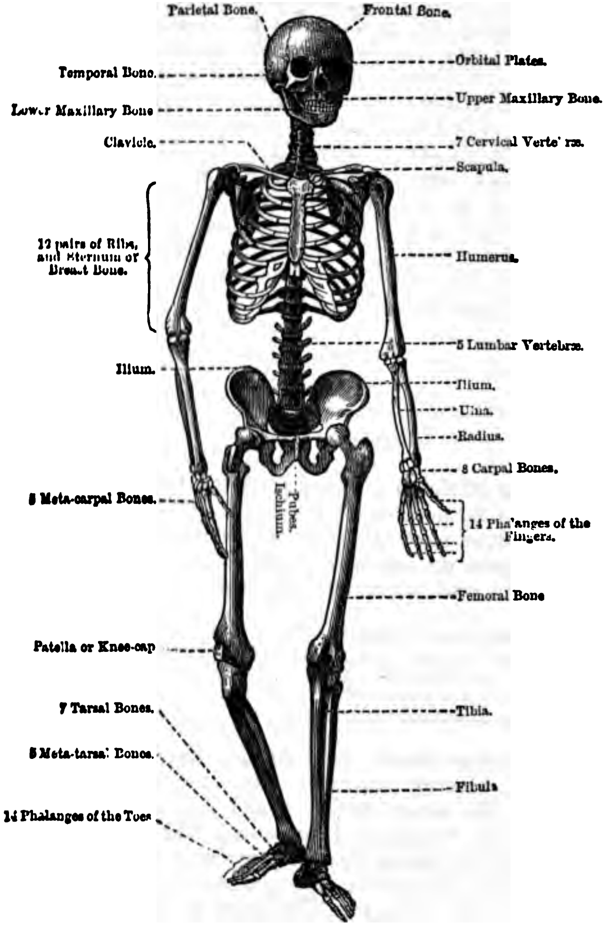

Parietal Bone.
Frontal Bone.
Temporal Bone.
Orbital Plates.
Lower Maxillary Bone
Upper Maxillary Bone.
Clavicle.
7 Cervical Vertebræ.
Scapula.
12 pairs of Ribs, and Sternum or Breast Bone.
Humerus.
5 Lumbar Vertebræ.
Ilium.
Ilium.
Ulna.
Radius.
8 Carpal Bones.
5 Meta-carpal Bones.
Pubes.
Ischium.
14 Phalanges of the Fingers.
Femoral Bone
Patella or Knee-cap
7 Tarsal Bones.
Tibia.
5 Meta-tarsal Bones.
Fibula
14 Phalanges of the Toes

Fig. 7.

black-board and *skeleton*, by a good teacher, in the course of *two* lessons of less than an hour each.

The thirty-two *teeth* belong to the *tegumentary* (skin) system, and not to the *osseous* system; that is, they form no part of the *skeleton* proper.

49. Properties of Bone.—*Bone*, as we usually see it *out of the body*, is a solid, hard, yellowish-white, inflexible, tough, durable, and, compared with its strength, *light* substance. (See *Osseous Tissue.*)

50. Living Bone, when exposed, as by wound or injury, as it exists in the *living* body, has a *reddish* or *pink* colour, due to the blood circulating in its larger capillaries.

51. Composition of Bone.—Human bone consists of about one-third of *organic* or *animal* matter, and two-thirds of earthy matter. *The animal matter* consists chiefly of *connective tissue*, often improperly termed *gelatine*, because it yields gelatine on boiling. It gives *toughness* to the bones. The *Earthy matter*, which gives *hardness* and *durability* to the bones, consists chiefly of *salts of lime*, chiefly *phosphate of lime* (*calcium phosphate*), and *carbonate of lime* (chalk or *calcium carbonate*), of which there is nearly five times as much *phosphate* as *carbonate*. It also contains small quantities of phosphate of magnesia (magnesium phosphate) and common salt (sodium chloride.)

EXPERIMENT I.—Place a bone on the top of a bright red-hot fire, until all the animal matter has been decomposed or burnt. The *residue*, which consists purely of the *earthy matter*, will remain. It will be extremely *brittle* and *inflexible*, but will retain the *shape* of the bone.

EXPERIMENT II.—Immerse a long bone for a few days in dilute *nitric* or *hydro-chloric acid*. The *earthy matter* will dissolve out, leaving the flexible *matrix* of the bone, consisting of *animal matter* (connective tissue). The bone will now have lost its *hardness* and inflexibility, but it will still retain its toughness, and may now be bent or twisted into a knot.

52. Bones in Infancy and Old Age.—The *quantity* of *earthy matter* in the bones, however, varies greatly at different periods in life. During infancy they scarcely contain any earthy matter, and are said to consist almost entirely of cartilage. At this period the bones are comparatively soft and flexible—they consequently *bend* easily, and do not *break*.

53. During *old age*, however, the quantity of *earthy matter* increases very greatly: the bones consequently become very *brittle*; and, *if broken*, in many cases will not again unite.

54. The lower we go in the scale of animal life the less the quantity of *phosphate* of lime, and the greater the quantity of *carbonate* of lime do we find in the skeleton, until at last the former almost entirely disappears from it.

55. Classification of Bones by Shape.—Bones are divisible according to shape into *four* classes, viz.:

(1.) *Long Bones*, chiefly found in the limbs, where they form *levers*. The long bones beginning upwards are the clavicle, humerus, radius, ulna, femur, tibia, fibula, metacarpal, and metatarsal bones, and the phalanges.

(2.) *Short bones*, as the carpal and tarsal bones (those of the wrists and ankles.) They consist of an external crust of hard *compact* bony tissue, the whole of the interior of the bone being composed of loose or *cancellated* bony tissue.

(3.) *Flat bones*, as the large bones of the cranium (the frontal, parietal bones, &c.), the ossa innominata sternum, &c. (See *Diploe.*)

(4.) *Irregular bones*, that is bones which cannot be found classified under either of the preceding heads, as the sphenoid and ethmoid bones of the skull, the inferior turbinated bone of the nose, and the hyoid bone of the tongue.

56. Division and Growth of Long Bones.—All the long bones consist of a shaft and two extremities.

The *Shaft* or *Cylinder* is a long *hollow* cylinder, the thick walls of which are composed of *compact* bony tissue. The hollow space in the interior, which contains the *marrow*, is termed the *medullary canal*.

The upper extremity of the large bones is termed the *head* of the bone. The two extremities are usually much expanded, frequently forming *condyles* (from Gr. *condulos* knuckle).

The *Long Bones* grow in *thickness* by the deposition of new bony matter in *successive layers*, by the inside of the *periosteum*, or the *outside* of the bone.

The *long bones* grow in *length* from the *ends* of their *shafts*. The *extremities*, termed the *epiphyses* (from Gr. *epi*, upon, and *phuo*, I grow), of the long bones are, until *adult* age, when the bones have ceased to grow, *separated* from the *shaft* by a kind of *cartilaginous* layer, which dips in between the ends of the shaft and the *epiphyses* or extremities. The *growth*, in *length*, of the bone takes place in this cartilaginous layer, chiefly in the *surface* towards the end of the *shaft*.

57. Periosteum (from Gr. *peri*, round; *osteon*, bone). The exterior of the bone, except the parts covered by articular cartilage, is lined by a thin, firm, tough vascular membrane, consisting of white fibrous tissue, termed the *periosteum*. When the *periosteum* of any portion of a bone is seriously injured, *necrosis*, or death of that portion of the bone sets in, because of the interruption of its *nutrition*.

The *periosteum* serves—1st, As a *medium of attachment* to the bone for the *muscles*, *tendons*, and *ligaments;*

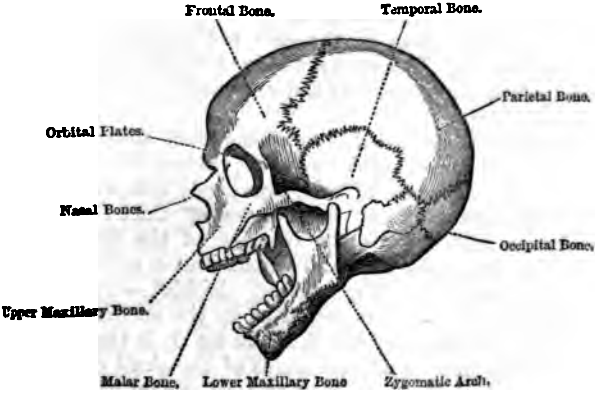


Fig. 8. The Human Skull.

2nd, It *lessens friction* by making the surface of the bo *smoother*; 3rd, It constitutes a medium, or nidus, i which the blood-vessels intended to *nourish* and *vivi* the bone ramify and break up into smaller branch before they can enter the minute orifices in its surfa and be distributed through its substance.

58. **Processes** (from Lat., *pro,* before; and *cedo,* go).—The various eminences, projections, protuberance &c., projecting from the surface of the bone for th *attachment* of muscles, tendons, or ligaments are terme *processes;* as the *occipital,* the *odontoid,* and the *masto* processes, and the *trochanters* of the *femur.*

59. **The Head,** which is mounted on the *atlas* or to most bone of the vertebral column, consists of the bon of the *cranium,* and of the *face.*

60. **The Cranium** (from Gr. *kranion,* skull) is th oval bony shell, the *brain-case,* by which the *brain* an *medulla oblongata* are enclosed and protected.

The cranium consists of eight bones, viz.: the *front* bone, the two *parietal* bones, the two *temporal* bones (th temples), the *occipital* bone, the *ethmoid,* and the *spheno* bones. The two latter bones, not shown in the diagram are situated at the *base* of the skull, over the back of th root of the nose. (See Fig. 8.)

The *essential* parts of the ears are contained in th *temporal* bones. The eyes are lodged in the *orbits.* Th *orbital plates* are formed by the union of the bones of th skull and face.

The skull is regarded by philosophical anatomists a consisting of four *modified vertebræ,* each of which form part of the *double tube* of bone previously referred to.

61. **The Dura Mater** is the dense, thick, *inelasti* membrane which lines the interior of the skull, an forms the *falx, tentorium,* and *venous sinuses* of the brain

62. **Diploë** (from Gr. *diploos,* double).—The loos *cancellated* bony tissue represented by the shading in th middle of the bones of the skull, in fig. 1, is termed th *diploë.* The flattish arched bones of the skull consist o two layers or *tables* (an outer and an inner) of hard o *compact* bony tissue connected by a *diplous* or cancellate

layer. By this arrangement of structure, the bones of the skull are not only *lightened*, but external injury or *fracture* is frequently prevented from passing to the *interior* of the skull. Most of the *flat* bones possess this structure.

63. Sutures. (from Lat. *suo*, I sew). The bones of the *cranium* and *face* are joined *immovably* to each other by means of *dove-tailed* or somewhat serrated edges; the bones being presented *edge* to *edge*, the *projections* of the one bone fitting into corresponding *indentations* of its adjacent bone, much in the same way that a cabinet-maker unites the sides of a well-made box or drawer to each other. These *joints*, termed *sutures*, owe their name to their *sewed* or *seam-like* appearance.

The bones of the *cranium* grow from their *edges*, by which they thus adapt themselves to the increasing size of the *growing brain*.

Where the bones do not properly meet edge to edge, but *overlap* each other like the scales of a fish, they are termed *squamous* (from Lat. *squama*, a scale), sutures.

The *sagittal suture* connects the two *parietal* bones, the *coronal suture* connects the *frontal* and *parietal* bones, the *lambdoidal suture* unites the *occipital* with the *parietal* bones, and the *squamous suture* unites the *temporal* with the parietal bones.

64. The Face contains fourteen bones, viz.:—two *nasal*, two *upper maxillary* (jaw), one *lower maxillary*, two *malar*, two *palate*, two *lachrymal*, one *vomer* (septum of nose), and two *inferior turbinated* bones. The face contains the *cavities* of the mouth, nose, and eyes, the cavities of the latter being termed the *orbits*, thus together enclosing five cavities, which contain the organs, sight, smell, and taste.

65. The Hyoid Bone, or the tongue bone, is the U-shaped bone situated between the *tongue* and the *larynx*, to which the muscles of the tongue are attached.

66. The Vertebral or Spinal Column is the long, bony double tube or column, which, giving support to the head, passes down the *median* line at the back of the trunk, and joins the *pelvis* at the lower end of the trunk.

It consists of twenty-four *immovable* vertebræ, the *os sacrum*, which consists of five imperfect *fixed* vertebræ, united into one bone, and the *os coccygis,* which contains four imperfect vertebræ. The *spinal column* thus contains in all thirty-three vertebræ, consisting of seven *cervical* (neck), twelve *dorsal* (back), five *lumbar* (loins) vertebral bones, together with the *os sacrum* and *os coccygis,* which are all clearly shown in fig. 9.

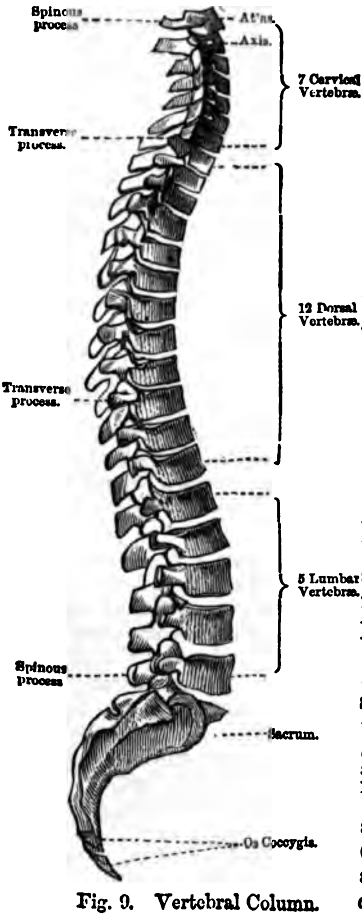


Fig. 9. Vertebral Column.

It will be observed on examining the diagram of the vertebral column, that the *vertebræ* increase in *size* and *strength downward,* because of the greater burden they have to bear, thus affording additional structural proof that the *erect* is the position natural to man. It will also be observed that the transverse and lateral *processes* become larger, especially at the loins, for the attachment of larger and more powerful muscles.

67. A Vertebra (from Lat. *verto,* I turn) is a single complete *segment* of the *vertebral column,* or *bony axis* of the *trunk.* It is one of the *irregular* bones: its *essential* parts are the *body* or *centrum* (its anterior segment), and a posterior segment, the *arch.* (See figs. 10, 11.)

But the *vertebræ* also usually contain *transverse* and *spinous processes* for the attachment of the muscles by which the body is *supported*, *bent*, and *turned*; *lateral* *notches* by the superposition of which the *intervertebral foramina* (lateral apertures), by which the *spinal nerves* leave the *spinal canal*, are formed—*articular surfaces* and *facets*, by which they are joined to *each other* and to the *ribs*.

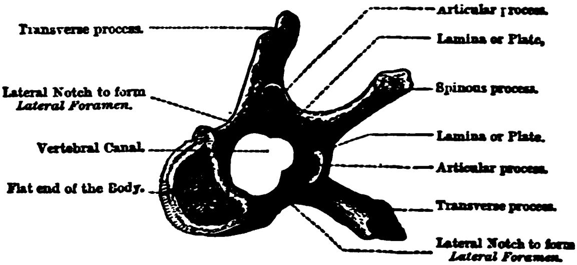


Fig. 10. Top of a Vertebra.

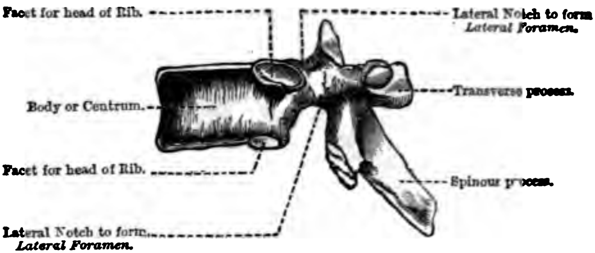


Fig. 11. Side of a Vertebra.

The *bodies* or *centrums* are held together, one over the other, by the *intervertebral layers* of *fibro-cartilage*, their arches being connected by the *ligamenta subflava* of the *vertebral column.* The *spinal foramen* (hole) *of each* bone also being superposed, form the *spinal* or *vertebral canal,* which encloses and protects the *spinal cord.*

By this arrangement, each of the twenty-four movable vertebræ thus yielding a little, a considerable amount of *bending* and *torsion* of the *vertebral column* is secured without injury or compression of the enclosed *spinal cord.* If the spinal column were *bent* suddenly and sharply as in the case of the elbow (a hinge joint), the spinal cord would be compressed, immediate paralysis would be produced, and the body would instantly fall.

The bones of the *head* are supposed to consist of *four modified vertebræ,* as previously explained.

68. The Pelvis (Lat. a basin) is the *girdle* of bones at the lower end of the trunk which supports the contents of the abdomen, and transmits the weight of the body to the lower limbs which are attached by the rounded heads of the femoral bones.

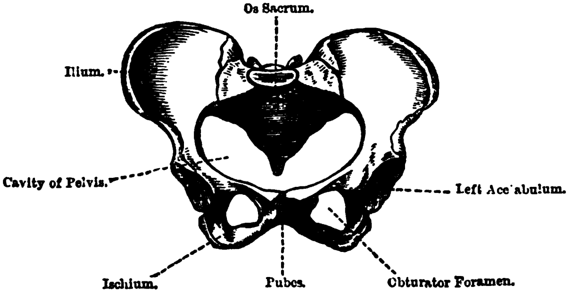


Fig. 12. The Pelvis.

It is formed by the junction of four bones—the two ossa innominata, the os sacrum, and the os coccyx.

The *ossa innominata* are the two *hip* bones of the *pelvis.* Each *hip* bone contains a deep round *cavity,* the *acetabulum,* into which the large rounded head of the *os femoris* (thigh bone) fits, and in which it is retained by the *ligamentum teres* (round) the *cotyloid* and other *ligaments.*

Each hip bone (*os innominatum*) consists of three bones—viz., the *ilium*, the *ischium*, the bone which supports us when sitting, and the *pubes*.

The *obturator foramen* is a large *hole* in the *hip* bone through which the *large blood-vessels*, and the *obturator* and *sciatic* nerves pass to the leg. It also serves to *lighten* the pelvis.

69. **The Thorax** is the osseo-cartilaginous conical or beehive-shaped cage, which contains and protects the principal organs of circulation and respiration.

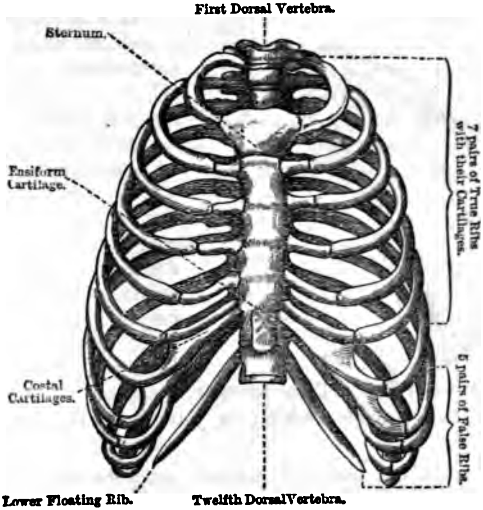


Fig. 13. The Bones of the Human Thorax.

It consists of the *sternum* (breast-bone), the lower end of which is cartilaginous (gristly)—the twelve pairs of *ribs* (more or less movable) joining the vertebra behind to the sternum in front—the twelve *dorsal vertebræ.*

70. **The Costae or Ribs** are elastic bony arches. They comprise seven pairs of *true* ribs and five pairs of *false* ribs.

The *true* ribs are united *directly* with the *sternum* by means c the *costal cartilages.*

The *false ribs* consist of three pairs of ribs whicl are joined *indirectly* to the sternum—that is, the *costa* *cartilages*, by which their anterior ends are terminated join the cartilages of the last (seventh) pair of the *tru* ribs, the latter only uniting with the *sternum;* and tw pairs, termed the *floating ribs*, which are *not* joined t the *sternum*, and have *no* costal cartilages. (See fig. 13.

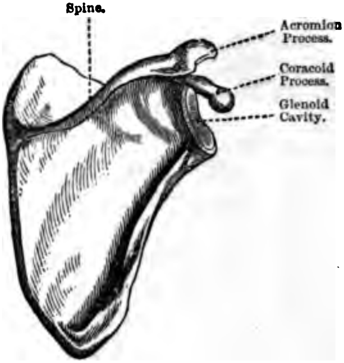


Fig. 14. Posterior View of Right Scapula:

71. The Scapula o shoulder blade is a irregularly, somewhat triangula shaped bone. It i situated at the bacl of the upper side o the thorax. Its *heac* which is turned outwards, contains *shallow* cavity o socket, the *glenoi* *cavity*, into which th head of the *humeru* is articulated. It i retained in its position by the *clavicle*, which is joined to its *acromio* extremity.

The *scapula* has two well marked *processes*—the *acromio* *process*, the summit of the shoulder, and the *coracoid proces* The general character of this bone may be well studied in th *shoulder blade* of a shoulder of mutton.

72. The Clavicle, or collar bone, is the long curve letter *ſ*-shaped bone by which the shoulder-blade, an with it the arm, are kept in their places. (See fig. 7.)

The *clavicle* acts as a *beam*, preventing the shoulder-blade fror falling forwards on to the chest, one end being attached to the to of the *sternum*, the other to the *acromion* process of the *scapula.*

73. The Arm and Hand contain (not counting th sesamoid bones) thirty bones—viz., the *os humerus*, the *os ulna*, the *os radius*, the eight *carpal* (wrist) bones, the five *metacarpal* (palm) bones, and the fourteen *phalanges* of the fingers.

74. The Humerus (from Lat. shoulder), or bone of the *upper* arm, is a long, somewhat cylindrical or prismoidal hollow bone. At its upper extremity it is expanded into a globular form, the *head*, joined by a *ball-and-socket* joint to the scapula. At its lower end it is expanded into *two condyles*, at which extremity it is *articulated* (jointed) with the *ulna* and *radius* of the *lower* arm. The intermediate portion is termed the *shaft*. (See fig. 15.)

75. The Ulna (from Gr. *olene*, elbow) is the *larger* bone of the *fore-arm*. It is a long prismoidal bone; its upper extremity articulates by a *hinge* joint with the

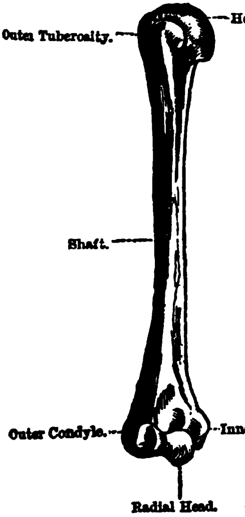


Fig. 15. Humerus.

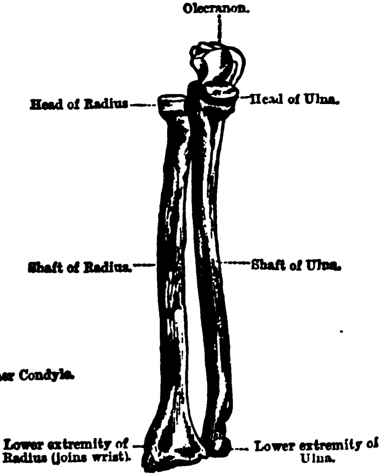


Fig. 16. Radius and Ulna.

humerus. It also articulates with the *radius.* A process termed the *olecranon* prevents the radius from bending too far back.

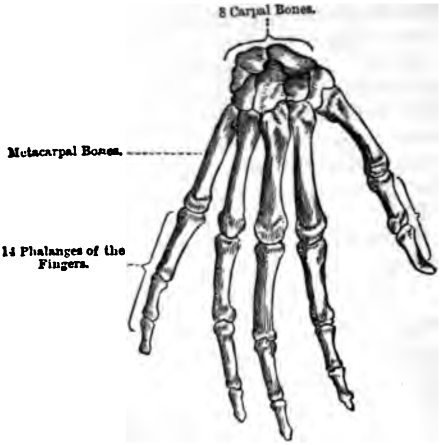


Fig. 17. Bones of the Wrist and Hand.

76. **The Radius** or *spoke-bone* is the long, somewhat curved prismoidal bone of the *fore-arm,* to which the hand is joined by the bones of the *wrist:* its upper end articulates with the *humerus.* (See figs. 16, 17.)

77. **The Carpal Bones** consist of the eight bones which, arranged in *two rows* of *four* each, and united by means of ligaments, form the *carpus* or wrist.

78. **The Metacarpal Bones** are the five small prismoidal bones which form the palm of the hand. They are united to the *first* row of the *phalanges* of the fingers by *hinge* joints. (See fig. 17.)

79. **The Phalanges of the Hand** are the fourteen prismoidal bones of the fingers. They are articulated, three to each finger, except the thumb, which only contains two *phalanges,* by means of *hinge* joints. (See fig. 17.)

80. **The Lower Extremities,** including the *thigh, leg,* and *foot,* comprise (excluding the *sesamoid* bones and two *patellæ*) twenty-nine bones in each *limb,* viz. :—The *os femoris* (*femur* or thigh bone) *tibia, fibula,* the seven *tarsal* bones, the five *metatarsal* bones, and the fourteen *phalanges* of the toes.

81. **The Os Femoris** (from Lat. *femur*, the thigh) is the largest and strongest bone in the skeleton. At the top of its large globular *head* is a depression, in which is inserted the end of the *ligamentum teres*, one of the *ligaments* by which it is retained in the *acetabulum*.

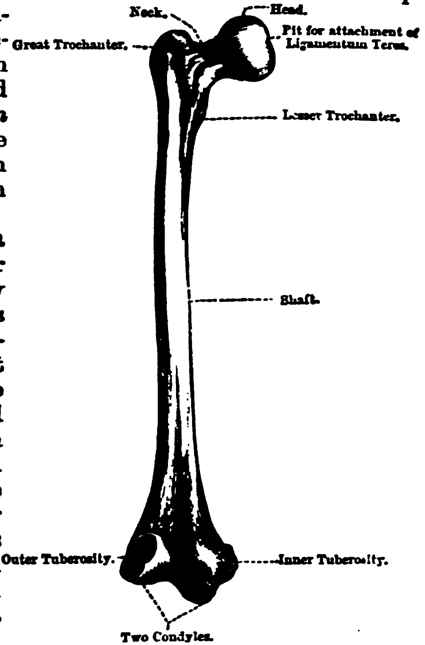


Fig. 18. The Right Femur.

82. **The Tibia** (Lat. a flute), or *shin-bone*, originally so called from its supposed resemblance to an ancient *musical pipe*, is the long prismoidal vertical bone which forms the *front* and *inner* side of the *lower* leg. After the *os femoris*, it is the largest bone in the body. Its head articulates by a *hinge joint* with the *femur*. Its lower extremity *articulates* with the *astragalus* (one of the tarsal bones). (See fig. 19.)

83. **The Fibula** (Lat. a buckle), or *splint-bone*, is the long slender outer bone of the leg. It is *parallel* with the *tibia*, being immovably attached to it by its upper and lower extremities, in order to increase its strength. (See fig. 19.)

84. **The Tarsal Bones** (from Gr. *tarsos*, sole of the foot) comprise the seven irregularly shaped bones which form the heel, the ancle, and part of the sole—viz., the

os calcis, astragalus, cuboid, scaphoid, and the internal, middle, and external ***cuneiform*** bones.

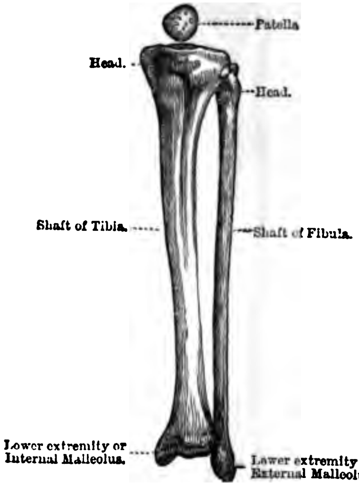

Patella
Head.
Head.
Shaft of Tibia.
Shaft of Fibula.
Lower extremity or Internal Malleolus.
Lower extremity or External Malleolus.

Fig. 19. The Left Tibia and Fibula.

85. **The Metatarsal Bones** (from Gr. ***meta,*** beyond, and ***tarsos***) comprise the five long bones which form the ***lower instep,*** or front part of the arch of each foot. (See fig. 20.)

86. **The Phalanges of the Foot,** or the ***toes,*** are the fourteen bones of the toes which correspond in ***number*** with those of the hand. The two ***phalanges*** of the big toe differ, however, in articulation from those of the thumb, in not being opposable to the rest of the *foot.* (See fig. 20.)

87. **The Ligaments** (from Lat. *ligo,* I bind) are the flexible, very *pliant,* but *tough, inextensible,* white, shining, somewhat silvery-looking bands of *white fibrous* (connective) tissue, by which the ends of the movable bones are connected together so as to form the ***movable joints:*** as the ligaments of the wrist and the foot, the ***transverse ligament*** of the ***atlas,*** the ***glenoid ligament*** of the shoulder, the ***ligamentum teres,*** and the ***capsular ligament*** of the head of the ***thigh bone,*** &c.

Some few ligaments, as the ***ligamenta subflava*** (from Lat. ***flavis,*** yellow), which connect the adjacent ***arches*** of the vertebræ, and the ***ligamentum nuchæ*** of the neck of the horse, the rudiments of which only exist in man, consist almost entirely of ***yellow elastic tissue.*** In these cases the *elasticity* of the ligament is intended to act as a partial substitute for *muscular power.*

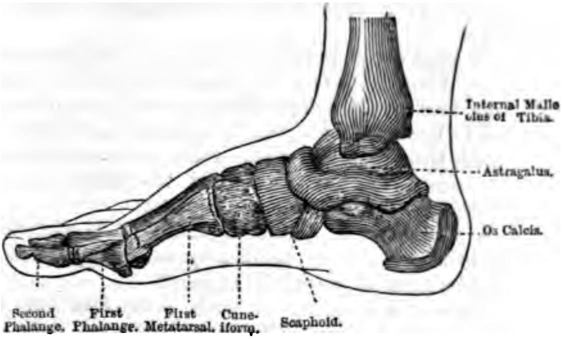


Fig. 20. Bones of the Right Foot.

For **Articular Cartilages** and **Synovial Sacs,** see *Animal Mechanics.*

CHAPTER IV.

CHEMICAL PRELIMINARIES.

88. **Analysis of the Animal Body.**—If the body of one of the higher animals were first *separated* into its various *complete* parts, only such parts being considered complete and distinct which, like the eyes or the stomach, performed a special and distinct office or duty, such a part would constitute an *organ.*

If such a part or organ was again submitted to disintegration, by which it was resolved into its simplest or most elementary structures, such structures would constitute the *tissues* of the organ or body.

If the *tissues* were again reduced to a simpler form, so that *all traces of structure disappeared*, the *substances* thus obtained would constitute the *proximate* or *organic principles* of which the *tissues were composed*—as *albumen*, *fibrin*, &c.

If the *organic* or *proximate principles* were again in their turn *disintegrated* or *decomposed*, so that the elements entering into their composition should be ultimately reduced to their *simplest* and most *elementary* state, the substances thus obtained would constitute the *ultimate* or *chemical elements* of the *tissue* or of the body, as *oxygen*, *carbon*, *nitrogen*, *phosphorus*, *sodium*, &c.

89. **A Chemical or Ultimate Element** is therefore a substance which cannot be *decomposed* or *separated* into any *simpler* form of matter than itself.

Chemists are acquainted with sixty-four or more elementary substances. Of these, however, only about one-fourth have been found *as constituents* in the *animal body* in any appreciable quantity. The following are the *chemical elements* which may be obtained by the *chemical analysis* of the human body:—*Oxygen*, *hydrogen*, *carbon*, *nitrogen*, *sulphur*, *silicon*, *phosphorus*, *chlorine*, *fluorine*, *potassium*, *sodium*, *calcium*, *magnesium*, *iron*, and possibly *manganese*, and one or two other elements.

90. **Organogens** (from Gr. *organon*, an instrument; and *gennao*, I produce).—The bulk of most *animal* and *vegetable* substances is composed of the first *four* elements named in the preceding list—viz., *oxygen*, *hydrogen*, *carbon*, and *nitrogen*—these bodies have therefore been termed the *organogens*.

91. **Oxygen** is the most abundant element in the universe, forming *more* than *one-half* of the known crust of the earth, *eight-ninths* of all the water that exists, and upwards of *two-thirds* by weight of the human body.

Oxygen, when *free*—that is, in its pure and gaseous state—is a colourless, *tasteless*, *odourless*, transparent, invisible, *respirable* gas. It is itself uninflammable, but is the best *supporter of combustion* of common inflammable substances known. It is also a *supporter of life*, and is capable of entering into *chemical union* with most of the other *chemical elements*.

In appearance, and by smell or taste, *oxygen* is indistinguishable from common atmospheric air.

EXPERIMENT I.—Kindle a long splinter of wood, blow out the flame, and then plunge the *red-hot* end into a bottle of *oxygen*: it will be immediately *re-kindled*, and will burn with great vigour and *splendour*. In this way *oxygen* may be *readily* distinguished from *common air*.

EXPERIMENT II.—After the match has been burning for a few seconds, pour in a small quantity of clear transparent *lime-water*: it will immediately become *white* and *turbid*, showing that the *wood* has become *oxidized*, the *oxygen* having combined *chemically* with its *carbon*, and formed *carbonic acid gas*; another portion of the *oxygen* will also have *oxidized* its *hydrogen*, and formed water. *Oxygen gas* supports life by *oxidizing* or combining with (*burning*) the tissues. The products of this combustion or oxidation either pass off from the body in the *gaseous* form, as *carbonic acid*, the *vaporous* form, as *aqueous vapour*, or in the *liquid* form, as *solution of urea*.

92. **Hydrogen** (from Gr. *hudor*, water; and *gennao*, I produce) is a *chemical element*, which is never found *free* in nature. When uncombined with other elements, it is a colourless, tasteless, odorless, transparent, invisible gas. It is highly *inflammable* and *respirable*, but a *non-supporter* of *life* and *combustion*. When *burnt* (oxidized) in *air* or *oxygen gas*, it produces *watery vapour*, great *heat* being evolved. When *fatty substances* are *slowly oxidized* in the body, the *hydrogen* contributes to the animal heat. The *hydrogen* of *sugar*, *starch*, and *gum*, being already fully oxidized, cannot contribute to the *animal heat*.

EXPERIMENT.—Hold, for a moment or two only, a *cold* glass tumbler over a candle or gas flame. The sides of the tumbler immediately become covered with a deposit of *dew* (condensed aqueous vapour). The water is formed by the combination of the *oxggen* and *hydrogen*, in the proportion of *one atom* of the former to *two atoms* of the latter.

93. **Water** consists of the oxide of hydrogen (hydric

oxide). It is, as just shown, produced whenever *hydrogen* or any of its compounds are burnt. It exists largely in nature in the form of a transparent, colourless, inodorous, tasteless, bland liquid, which *boils* at 100° Centigrade (212° Fahrenheit), and *freezes* at 0° Centigrade (32° Fahrenheit). It forms a very large proportion of the substance of all living animal bodies, and, though in itself it is *quite innutritious* (containing no carbon or nitrogen), an adequate supply of it is essential to life. The *animal heat* is kept down to its proper limit or degree by the escape of *water* in its *vaporous* condition, which thus carries off the *excess of heat.* The *chemical symbol* of *one atom* of water is $H_2 O$.

94. Nitrogen (from Gr. *nitron,* saltpetre; and *gennao,* I produce) is the most characteristic *element* of *animal* substances. It has therefore been described as the *basis* of the *animal tissues*—being to the *animal* world what *carbon* is to the *vegetable* world.

In its *uncombined* state, it exists in the form of a *permanent,* colourless, tasteless, inodorous, invisible *respirable gas,* remarkable for its series of *negative* properties. It is inflammable, and will *neither support life* nor *combustion.* Its most important ordinary compounds are *nitric acid* (nitric anhydride or pentoxide) and *ammonia.* The former consists of *nitrogen* and *oxygen* ($N_2 O_5$), the latter of *nitrogen* and *hydrogen.* It also forms the principal constituent in *bulk* or volume of the *atmosphere,* though its action is purely *negative.*

It is an essential constituent of the *proteids,* and of the so-called *flesh-forming, albuminous* or *plastic* food. Without *nitrogen* the *tissues* could not be repaired.

EXPERIMENT I.—Get a wide-mouthed bottle, containing *common air* only, also a stand, to support a small piece of *phosphorus,* about three inches, over a basin of water. Kindle the *phosphorus,* and immediately place the bottle over the burning phosphorus, its mouth *inverted,* and a little under the water.

The *phosphorus* at first burns brilliantly, but is speedily extinguished; the water now quickly rises inside to about one-fifth the height of the bottle. Allow the white fumes to subside: the clear transparent gas which now fills the bottle is *nitrogen.*

EXPERIMENT II.—Plunge a *lighted* match or candle into the bottle, it is immediately *extinguished*, showing that it does not support combustion.

The last experiment shows that nitrogen gas is a mere *diluent* of the *oxygen* of the atmosphere; or, in other words, that it plays the same part in *diluting* and lessening the energy of the *oxygen* that the water plays in diluting the spirits in a glass of toddy.

95. Ammonia (spirits of hartshorn) is almost invariably obtained by the *decomposition* of *animal* or *vegetable* matter, containing *nitrogen* either *slowly*, at ordinary temperatures, or *quickly*, by the application of *heat*.

In the form of gas it is colourless, transparent, and *invisible;* has a very strong, peculiar, *pungent* odour; is very irritating, and is *irrespirable*. It is very *soluble* in water, forming with it a strong *aqueous solution*, having all the *chemical* properties of the gas. This is usually sold as *ammonia*.

It is strongly *alkaline* turning *red*, betimes *blue*. It exists in the atmosphere in *minute* quantities. It is from the *ammonia* in the *air* that *plants* obtain their *nitrogen*.

One *molecule* of ammonia consists of 1 *atom* of *nitrogen*, or 14 parts by weight, chemically united with 3 *atoms*, or 3 parts by weight of *hydrogen*. Its chemical symbol is $N\ H_3$.

The *urea* which leaves the body, carrying with it the *waste nitrogen* of the *tissues*, afterwards splits up into *carbonic acid* and *ammonia*.

96. Atmospheric Air (See **Respiration**).

97. Carbon (from Lat. *carbo*, coal), is usually regarded as the chemical *basis* of the *vegetable* world. It is one of the principal constituents of most vegetable and animal substances.

Good *charcoal* consists almost exclusively of *carbon;* but it exists in its purest known form in the *diamond*.

Carbon in its *free* state is a solid, infusible, fixed, insoluble, *combustible* substance, having a strong attraction for oxygen, with which it readily combines at a high temperature, producing *carbonic acid gas* (carbon dioxide).

It is an essential constituent of all *food stuffs*, especially of *heat-forming*, *fuel*, or *respiratory* food. (See Food.)

98. Carbonic Acid Gas (carbonic dioxide) is the *noxious*, and, when *pure* (concentrated), *irrespirable* gas which is given off from *lime-kilns*, effervescing soda-water, ginger-beer, champagne, &c.; or when strong vinegar is poured on to chalk, or on to egg-shells; and which is produced when wood, coal-gas, and ordinary inflammable substances are burnt.

It is also produced during respiration, and forms 2½ to 5 per cent. of the air expelled from the lungs.

It is a *heavy*, transparent, colourless, *uninflammable* gas, and is also a *non-supporter* of *life* and *combustion*, extinguishing flame, and, when inhaled, quickly producing death from *suffocation.* It has the properties of an *acid*, turning solution of *blue* litmus *red.* It is *soluble* in water and in the blood.

Carbonic acid is a very *heavy* gas, and therefore tends to collect at the bottom of old wells, caves, beer vats, &c., sometimes producing fatal results, when men enter them carelessly before ventilation.

Each *molecule* of carbonic acid contains 1 *atom*, or 12 parts by weight of carbon, *chemically united* with 2 *atoms*, or 32 parts by weight of oxygen. Its chemical symbol is $C\,O_2$.

EXPERIMENT I.—Introduce a small quantity of powdered carbonate of soda, or powdered chalk, or "whitening," into a large wide-mouthed bottle, and pour some strong vinegar into it. The powder will immediately begin to *effervesce.* After a few moments, introduce a lighted candle or match into the bottle, it will immediately be *extinguished* by the carbonic acid evolved.

EXPERIMENT II.—Hold the mouth of the bottle containing the effervescing mixture over the mouth of a glass tumbler. Plunge a lighted match or taper into the tumbler: the flame of the candle or match will be immediately extinguished, as before,—thus showing that *carbonic acid* is much heavier than common air; and consequently, though gaseous, may be *poured* from one vessel into another.

99. Putrefaction, Decomposition, and Decay after death, consist of the series of changes which ensues in most *complex organic* (especially *nitrogenous*) substances, under the combined action of *water* and *oxygen*, by which they first split up into *simpler* forms or compounds, and then become more or less oxidized. The *offensive odour* evolved from bodies passing through this state of *rottenness* is chiefly due to the presence of *carbon*, *sulphur*, and *phosphorus*, the larger portions of which are eliminated in the form of *carburetted*, *sulphuretted*, and *phosphuretted*, *hydrogen* gases.

100. *Nitrogen* is distinguished by its *feeble* power of *chemical attraction* for the other elements in its compounds; therefore the latter tend speedily to *break away* from it. *Oxygen*, on the other hand, characterized by its *powerful* attraction for these elements, promotes this process of *splitting-up* by, as it were, *chemically pulling* them *away* from the nitrogen *to* itself.

101. Incidental Elements.—In addition to the *organogens* (sec. 90), which are *essential* elements of the animal body, a number of other chemical elements, as previously stated (sec. 89), are usually present. These are described as the *Incidental Elements*, among the more important of which are sulphur, phosphorus, chlorine, sodium, calcium, and magnesium, the latter of which form the *bases* of the earthy salts so largely present in the body.

102. Mineral Compounds.—The principal mineral compounds of the body are sodium chloride (common salt), and a calcic phosphate (bone phosphate of lime), of which there are 5 or 6 lbs. in the body, calcium carbonate, and sulphate (carbonate and sulphate of lime), and the alkaline carbonates and phosphates.

After much *mental* exertion or *nervous* exhaustion, the quantity of the *phosphates* excreted in the urine as *acid* phosphates, increases very greatly as the result of nervous tissue *waste*.

It may be as well to state, for the benefit of the non-chemical reader, that the *salts* here mentioned are simply *compounds* of sodium, lime, magnesia, &c., with chlorine, sulphuric, phosphoric, carbonic, or other acids.

103. Endosmosis, Exosmosis, Osmosis (from Gr. *osmos*, impulse) is a species of *physico-chemical* action which prevails largely in living bodies, more especially in the various processes of *nutrition*, *secretion*, and *respiration*.

Osmosis is the action or process by which two different liquids separated from each other by a *porous solid*, or an intervening *membrane* will pass through its substance and *mix* together on either side of it. Usually a very much *larger* proportion of the one fluid than of the other *passes* through the membrane.

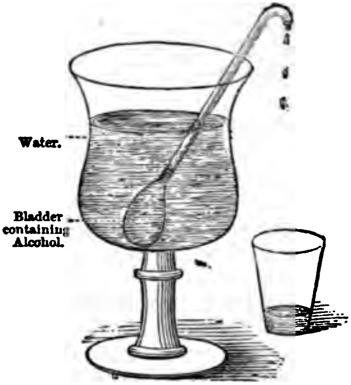


Fig. 21. Illustration of Osmosis.

EXPERIMENT.—Procure a *glass vessel*, a *glass tube* with a small bore and a curved end, a *small bladder*, some *water*, and some *alcohol* (spirits of wine). Fill the vessel two-thirds full of water, tie the bladder to the lower end of the tube, fill it with alcohol, and immerse it in the water. (See fig. 21.) The water will *pass* in through the walls of the bladder by *endosmosis* until the tube not only becomes full but overflows in drops, which may be collected and measured, in which case the instrument becomes an *endosmeter*. A very small quantity of the alcohol *passes out* of the bladder by *exosmosis*.

If a thin *collodion* bag were substituted for the bladder, the process would be reversed, and much *more* alcohol would pass *out* of the collodion bag than water would pass *in*.

The two Greek prefixes *endo*, in, and *exo*, out, show the *direction* in which the liquid passes.

Mixed solutions may be analyzed on this *principle;* the process is then termed *dialysis.*

104. Diffusion of Liquids and Gases.—When two *liquids* or *gases* of unequal densities are mixed, they will interpenetrate each other's substance, the *lighter* gas or liquid proceeding downwards, the *heavier* gas or liquid upwards *against gravity* until they are uniformly mixed. In this way more heavy carbonic acid may be found on the tops of the highest mountains than on the level of the plains below.

It is by this principle of *diffusion*, which is governed by definite laws, that the fresh air taken in during each inspiration mixes with the air in the lung sacs, the *stationary air*, in the language of Professor Huxley, acting "the part of a middleman between the two parties—the blood and the fresh *tidal air*."

105. A Proximate Principle is an organic compound which enters into the substance of a tissue or organ. Its *molecules* are exceedingly complex, usually containing the four *organogens* united in very complex proportions, together with small quantities of sulphur and phosphorus.

Proximate principles comprise two kinds—the *nitrogenous*, termed the *proteids*, and the *non-nitrogenous.*

The principal *nitrogenous* proximate principles which enter into the composition of the animal body or its secretions are albumen, fibrin, syntonin, casein, globulin, hæmatine, gelatine and chondrin, and keratin.

106. Albumen (from Lat. *albus*, white), is the chief *nitrogenous* constituent of the blood and the "white of egg." It derives its name from its opaque *white* appearance when boiled. It is soluble in *alkaline* solutions. In its ordinary state, as in the *serum* of the blood, it *coagulates* when acted upon by *heat* or *acids.*

107. Fibrin is a *nitrogenous* substance which closely resembles *albumen* in its chemical composition and properties; it differs from it, however, in being *spon-*

taneously coagulable. It forms the net-work in blood-clot. It derives its name from its spontaneous tendency to form fibres.

108. **Syntonin** is the variety of *fibrin* constituting the bulk of *muscular fibre.*

109. **Casein** (from Lat. *caseus,* cheese) is the characteristic, most valuable and *nutritious* constituent of *milk.* It is separated as curd, on the addition of acid, or, when milk turns *sour,* from the conversion of its *sugar* into *lactic acid. Casein* is chemically identical with the *legumen* of beans, peas, and lentils.

110. **Globulin** is simply that variety of *albumen* of which the red corpuscles of the blood are chiefly composed. It exists in the crystalline lens of the eye as *crystallin.*

111. **Gelatin** (from Lat. *gelu,* ice), though possessing the general properties and chemical composition of the *proteids* or *albuminoids,* probably does not exist in the body until it has been developed by the prolonged action of boiling water on fibro-cartilage, the skin and other substances containing *white fibrous tissue.*

Isinglass, size, and glue are forms of gelatine. Its solutions possess a remarkable power of solidifying on cooling. A hot aqueous solution, containing only 1 part of gelatine to 99 parts of water, will solidify into a jelly on cooling.

112. **Chondrin** (from Gr. *chondros,* cartilage), in general resembles *gelatin,* but is obtained by the action of hot water on *true cartilage.*

113. **Keratin** (from Gr. *keras,* horn), is the peculiar principle of the horny tissues, including horn, hair, hoofs, and whalebone.

114. **Protoplasm** or **Bioplasm** is the general term applied to the supposed *nitrogenous albuminoid* or *proteid* substances or bases, or formative matters, out of which the various tissues are built up. It is supposed to be present in the bodies of all *living* animals and *growing* tissues, and has been variously termed sarcode, blastema,

ıinal matter. It consists of carbon, hydrogen, , and oxygen, in about the same proportions as ;e of egg" (albumen). All forms of *protoplasm* under the stimulus of the *electric current*, and ' (coagulate) under the influence of *heat*.

on-Nitrogenous Principles.—The principal non-ous substances used by animals as food are the and the *fats*. They consist of oxygen, hydro-carbon.

he Amyloids (from Gr. *amulon*, starch) com-se bodies in which the *oxygen* and the *hydrogen* ıdy combined in the proportion in which they *er*, and from which, therefore, no further heat erived by the body. They comprise *starch*, *gum*, and *sugar*, and are only useful as *heat-formers* of the *carbon* they contain.

tarch is an insoluble vegetable substance, and ;, before it can be utilized as food, must be con-ı the alimentary canal into soluble *sugar*.

nical symbol is $C_6 H_{10} O_5$, a molecule of starch thus con-rbon, hydrogen, and oxygen in the proportion of 6 atoms and 5 atoms of *water* ($H_2 O$).

extrine and **Gum** contain the same chemical ; as starch, united in the same proportions, but differently; they differ from starch mainly in ;at *solubility*. It is, however, uncertain how far useful as food, especially the latter.

ugar is mainly of vegetable origin; it is dis-ed by its sweet taste, solubility, and crystaliza-ıd its tendency, under favourable circumstances, ;rgo *vinous fermentation*, in which *alcohol* is l and carbonic acid evolved.

nical symbol is $C_{12} H_{22} O_{11}$, that is, one molecule of sugar the elements of 12 atoms of *carbon* and 11 atoms of *water*, the *carbon* only is useful as *fuel food*.

ıbsorbed into the blood its carbon is either burnt as y or fuel food, or the elements of the sugar are converted

120. The Fats are oily, *non*-nitrogenous substances, consisting of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, in varying proportions, which are chiefly found in the bodies of animals. They contain a large excess of *carbon* and *hydrogen*, as compared with oxygen, in consequence of which their *heating* powers (as fuel *food*) are very great.

They are insoluble in, and will not mix with water, but are converted into soluble *soaps* by the *alkalies*. They are either liquid or readily fusible, and are soluble in *ether* and *hot alcohol*.

121. Organ—Organized Bodies (from Gr. *organon*, an instrument). An *organ* is a special or distinct part of the body, which performs a special action, function, or office, as the eye, the ear, the kidney.

A body consisting of a number of organs united into *one system*, and *acting* together for a *common* object, is termed an *organized body*, or an *organization*. If such an organization contains a very *few* organs only, or if it consists of a great multiplication of the same organs, it is said to be of *low* organization; if it consists of a great *many* organs, each of which performs a *distinct* function, it is said to be of *high* organization.

Organized bodies differ from *inorganic* or *mineral* bodies, chiefly in the greater *complexity* of their chemical composition, their complex, heterogeneous, and cellular or vascular structure, and their growth, both by *insterstitial addition*, and *external* deposit.

122. The Function of an organ is the action, use, office, or duty performed by it, as sight, hearing, and *excretion*. The functions of digestion, absorption, respiration, nutrition, secretion, excretion, circulation, reproduction, &c., *common* to both animal and vegetable life, are described as *vegetative* functions; those peculiar to animal life only, as spontaneous locomotion, sensation, thought, are described as *animal* functions, or functions of *relation*.

123. Biology (from Gr. *bios*, life, and *logos*, a discourse), or the science of life, comprises two leading divisions, botany and zoology, the former, in its larger sense, treating of all that belongs to *plant* life, the latter of *animal* life.

124. **Anatomy** (from Gr. *ana*, through, and *temno*, I cut), is the science which treats of the *form*, *position*, and *structure* of the various parts of *organized* bodies. It is studied mainly by means of *dissection*, or, though less perfectly, by diagrams *drawn* or *photographed* from *dissections*.

125. **Physiology** and **Pathology** (from Gr. *phusis*, nature, and *logos*, a discourse) is the branch of biological science which treats of the uses and the modes in which the various functions of the body are performed during health; it is therefore sometimes defined as the *science of health*. The science which treats of the modes in which the *organs* perform their *functions* during *disease* is termed *pathology*.

126. **Histology** (from Gr. *istos*, a web or tissue, and *logos*, a discourse) is the branch of biological science which treats of the exceedingly *minute* or microscopical structures of the *tissues* and their functions.

CHAPTER V.

HISTOLOGICAL PRELIMINARIES.

127. **The Epithelium** is probably one of the *simplest* structures in the body. It consists of one or more *layers* of microscopic *nucleated* cells, termed *epithelial cells*, which are arranged so as to form *membranes*, which line (and are found only on) the *free surfaces* on the *interior* and on the *exterior* of the body, thus forming the exterior or free surface of the *epidermis*, and of the *mucous* and *serous* membranes.

Epithelial cells consist of an outer exquisitely fine *cell-wall*, a *nucleus* and *nucleoli*, and sometimes also other cell contents of fluid or granular matter. They are classified under *four* principal forms or varieties, according to their *shape* or other characters, viz.: 1, *Squamous* or *tesselated;* 2, *Spheroidal* or *glandular;* 3, *Columnar* or *cylindrical;* and 4, *Ciliated.*

128. The Squamous or Tesselated Epithelium Cells consists of flattish cells, which overlie each other like the *scales* of a fish, as in the cuticle, or which are placed side by side, edge to edge, like tiles or stones in the pavement, as in the *serous* and *synovial membranes,* the interior of the *lymphatics* and *blood-vessels.*

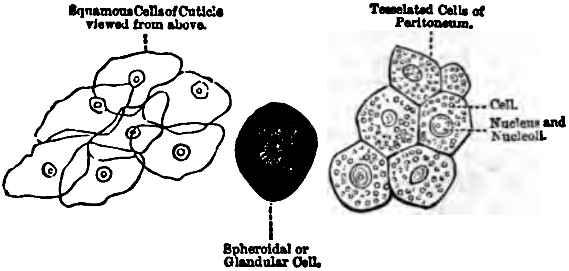

Squamous Cells of Cuticle viewed from above.
Tesselated Cells of Peritoneum.
Cell.
Nucleus and Nucleoli.
Spheroidal or Glandular Cell.

Fig. 22. Squamous and Spheroidal Epithelium Cells.

These cells are sometimes charged with *pigment,* as in the choroid coat of the eye; they are then termed *pigment cells.*

129. The Spheroidal or Glandular Epithelium Cells consist of the *rounded* or *globular* cells which line the interior of the compound glands, as those of the *liver, gastric glands,* &c. They assume a *polygonal* shape under pressure when crowded together.

The *glandular* epithelial cells really do the *secretory* work of the gland.

130. The Columnar or Cylindrical Epithelium Cells consist of the more or less oblong *cylindrical,* or conical-shaped shells, which, placed side by side, standing perpendicularly on their *lower* or *attached* extremities (which are in general *smaller* than their *free* ends), line the surfaces of the stomach and intestines, including the walls of the villi and of the *upper* portions of the gastric follicles, and also of the gland bladder, &c.

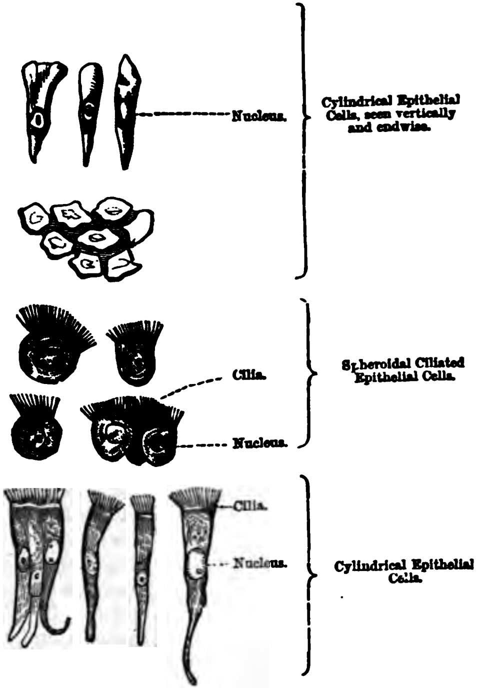

Nucleus.
Cylindrical Epithelial Cells, seen vertically and endwise.
Cilia.
Nucleus.
Spheroidal Ciliated Epithelial Cells.
Cilia.
Nucleus.
Cylindrical Epithelial Cells.

Fig. 23. Cylindrical and Ciliated Epithelial Cells.

131. The Ciliated Epithelium Cells consist of cells in general of the *cylindrical* variety, the *free* and *expanded* extremities of which are covered with exquisitely fine, pliant, *microscopic vibratile processes,* termed *cilia.*

They line the *free* surface of the entire respiratory tract, including all the air passages and tubes down to the air cells. A *tesselated* variety of *ciliated epithelium* also lines the *ventricles* of the brain, and the *central canal* of the spinal cord.

132. Connective Cellular or Areolar Tissue consists of a mesh-work in which large quantities of *white fibrous tissue* are intermingled with a comparatively small quantity of *yellow elastic tissue.* This tissue is most abundantly distributed through the body, forming a sort of *matrix,* which interpenetrates and *invests* the various organs, and *binds* their tissues and structures together.

It is a very pliant, flexible, elastic, extensible, whitish-looking structure. It probably itself receives no nerves and but very few blood-vessels.

133. White Fibrous Tissue consists of bands of parallel wavy fibres or filaments, $\frac{1}{40000}$ to $\frac{1}{20000}$ of an inch in diameter. It is exceedingly tough and flexible, but *inextensible* and inelastic. It contains but few nerves and blood-vessels. It forms the chief constituent of, 1, Connective tissue; 2, Ligaments; 3, Tendons; 4, Fibrous membranes, as the *periosteum, dura mater,* and the *sclerotic coat* of the eye. It yields *gelatine* on boiling.

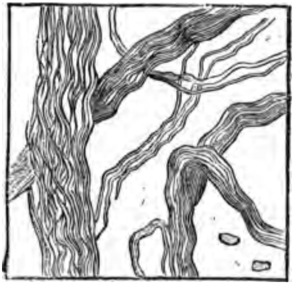


Fig. 24. White Fibrous Tissue.

Showing larger and smaller wavy bundles of parallel filaments. Magnified 40 diameters.

When a filament of connective tissue is treated with *acetic acid* its white fibrous tissue swells up enormously, entirely losing all character of fibre, the yellow elastic fibres being visible under the microscope as fine sharp lines in the middle of the swollen mass.

L. **Yellow Fibrous Tissue** consists of exceedingly sharp, well-defined, scopic, cylindrical, le, extensible, elastic, , about $\frac{1}{40000}$ of an n diameter. It is more ss sparingly distri- . through *connective* , but it forms the of certain *elastic* ures, as the *liga-* ; *subflava* and the *cords*. It is nearly *stic* as *india rubber*. es *not* yield *gelatine* boiled.

variety of *yellow* ; *tissue*, the filaments iich *anastomose* very r with each other, and ı forms the bulk of *middle* coat of the r arteries, is known *iestrated membrane*. ıen torn, its ends *curl* thus frequently, as when limbs are torn off by inery, retracting into, so as to plug up and stop orn ends of the arteries, so that little or no blood t from them.

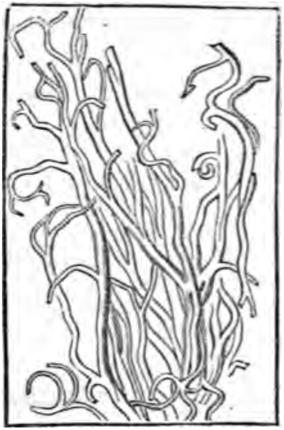


Fig. 25. Yellow Elastic Tissue.

Fibres from the Ligamenta Subflava, some of which branch off into smaller curling fibres, and some of which *anastomose* with each other. Magnified 200 diameters.

5. **Adipose Tissue** simply consists of *fat cells* dis- ted through the *meshes* of the *connective tissue*. The ells, about $\frac{1}{500}$ or $\frac{1}{400}$ of an inch in diameter, con- of oval or globular cell-walls, formed of a fine, sparent, and structureless membrane, filled with a wish oily fluid. After death, when the animal erature falls, this oily fluid solidifies or coagulates, becomes hard, as in the case of mutton suet. *Adi- tissue* is more or less *vascular*, the cells being more ss held together by the capillaries,

Its chief uses are :—(1.) It serves as a store of *heat-forn* material, which may be re-absorbed into the blood and burnt w required. (2.) As a *bad conductor* of *heat*, it tends to preven escape from the surface of the body. (3.) It serves as *pac material*, filling up space, forming a bed for and protecting softer organs.

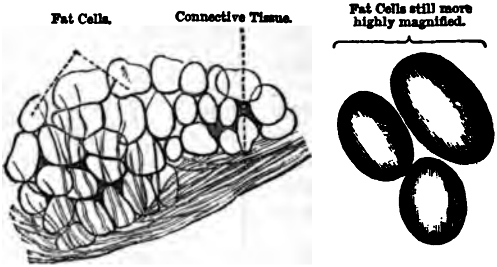


Fig. 26. Adipose Tissue (Fat Cells).

136. Cartilage or Gristle.—In the very young stat the child the *skel* consists entirel *cartilage*, which appears as *ossi tion* takes pl this is there termed *tempor* cartilage.

Permanent ca lage comprises varieties—(1), *L line* or *articul* (2), Fibro - ca lage.

Articular, *l line*, or *true* *tilage*, that by wl the *ends* of bones forming the *movable* joints are *tipped*, is a fi flexible, extensible, tough, elastic, whitish, opalesc

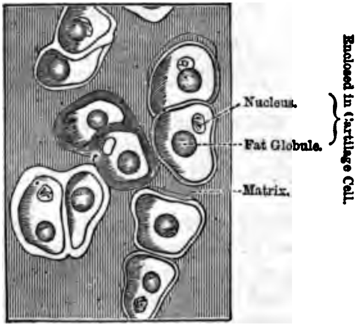


Fig. 27. Section of Articular Cartilage.

Magnified 350 diameter

substance. It consists of a *matrix* having somewhat the appearance of ground glass, in which are imbedded a large number of irregularly shaped *nucleated* cells, $\frac{1}{1200}$ to $\frac{1}{900}$ of an inch in diameter. It is usually described as *non-vascular*, and is not supplied with nerves. (See fig. 27.)

The *medullary cavities* in the long bones are formed as follows:—(1.) *Bony tissue* is formed or deposited *around* the sides, and at the ends of the cartilages, which form the skeleton of the very young subjects. (2.) The bony matter goes on increasing by *external* addition, while the original internal cartilage becomes *absorbed*.

137. Osseous Tissue.—Bony tissue is of two kinds—*cancellous* and compact.

Cancellous bony tissue consists of a *network* of slender fibres, minute bars, or *lamellæ* of bone joined together so as to present somewhat the appearance of *lattice-work*, from which it derives its name. It constitutes the mass of the irregularly shaped bones and the *enlarged ends* of the long bones. The interstices in cancellated tissue are filled with a kind of marrow.

Compact bony tissue, which forms a thin shell on the exterior of the irregular bones and which forms the *shafts* of the *long* bones, consists essentially of a *series* of *concentric* plates, or *laminæ* of bone, arranged round central *canals*, termed *Haversian canals*, each series forming, in fact, what may be termed a Haversian system.

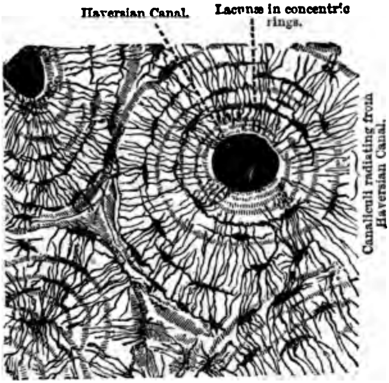

Haversian Canal.
Lacunæ in concentric rings.
Canaliculi radiating from Haversian Canal.

Fig. 28. Transverse Section of Compact Osseous Tissue (Bone.)

A *Haversian* system consists,

as shown in the diagram, of 1, A central *Haversian canal;* 2, A series of concentric bony *lamellæ;* 3, A series of concentric *rows of lacunæ*, by which the bony *lamellæ* are separated into distinct series; 4, A large number of *canaliculi, radiating* from the central *Haversian canal*, and joining the various surrounding (concentric) lamellæ into one system.

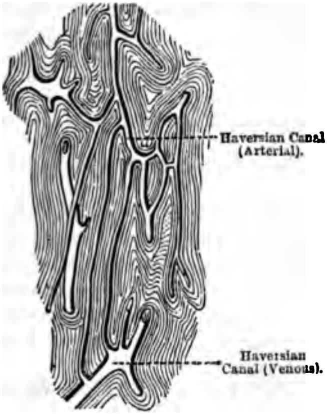


Fig. 29. Longitudinal Section of Compact Bone.

The *Haversian canals* have an average diameter of about the $\frac{1}{500}$ of an inch; the longer ones contain the minute blood-vessels which convey *nutriment* to the *interior* of the bone.

The *lacunæ* are minute pits or cavities of a very irregular shape which contain nuclei. They were formerly termed the bone corpuscles, and are described by Dr. Beale as containing minute masses of *protoplasm*, or *germinal matter*, which possibly contributes to the nourishment of the bone. They are described by some physiologists as consisting of minute cavities, or gaps, formerly occupied by the cartilage cells, the whole of the surrounding cartilage having been invaded by the earthy salts during *ossification*, except the immediate neighbourhood of the *nuclei* of the cells. Their irregular outline gives them a peculiar straggling spider-like form.

The *canaliculi* are exceedingly minute canals or *tubes* which pass off and through the various *lacunæ*, appearing to *radiate* from the *Haversian canal* and connect it with the various *lamellæ* which surround it. They doubtless distribute the *nutriment* contained in the *liquor sanguinis* through the bone. (See fig. 28.)

138. **The Enamel,** which forms the *surface* of the

crown or exposed parts of the teeth, is the hardest, most compact, and most mineral or earthy tissue in the body; it contains about 98 per cent. of *earthy*, and only about 2 per cent. of *animal* matter.

It consists of minute, striated, hexagonal rods, *prisms*, or fibres, which stand endwise, side by side, perpendicularly to the surface of the tooth, or to the *dentine*. (See fig. 30.)

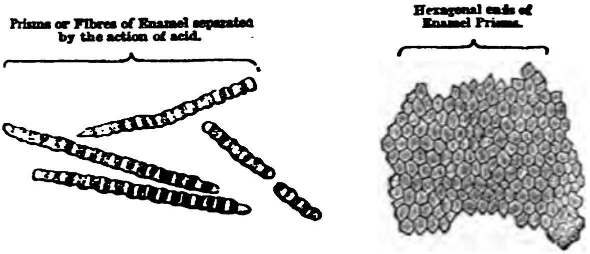

Prisms or Fibres of Enamel separated by the action of acid.
Hexagonal ends of Enamel Prisms.

Fig. 30. Fibres or Prisms of Enamel.

139. Dentine or Tooth Tissue constitutes the mass of the tooth. It consists of a modification of *osseous tissue*, containing, however, a much larger proportion of earthy matter (contains about 78 per cent.) than true bone.

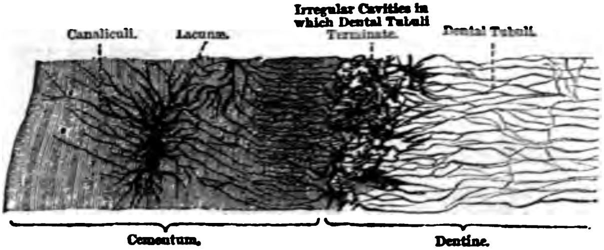


Fig. 31. Transverse Section of Tooth at the Junction of Cementum and Dentine.

When examined under the microscope, it is seen to consist of a dense homogeneous substance (*intertubular tissue*), which is permeated by an immense number of very minute wavy tubes (the *dental tubuli*), which anastomose with each other. (See fig. 31.)

140. The Crusta Petrosa—*cementum* or *cortical substance*—is the layer or crust of true bone, which surrounds or covers the hidden portion of the tooth from the *neck* to the end of the *fang*. (See fig. 31.)

141. Muscular Fibre.—The peculiar property of *muscular fibre* is its *contractility*, or power of *shortening*, under the influence of the will or of nervous stimulus, or under that of chemical, mechanical, or electrical irritation. There are two kinds of muscular fibre—*smooth* and *striated*. (See *Animal Mechanics*.)

142. Non-Striated (Organic) Muscular Fibre, also termed *smooth unstriped* muscular fibre, forms the chief constituent of the *involuntary* and of the *hollow* muscles, as those of the alimentary canal, the bladder, the gall-bladder, the coats of the arteries and of the excretory ducts and larger lymphatics. It is also found in the trachea, the iris, the skin, and elsewhere. Its contraction in the hair-sacs, from cold or fright, causes the *hair* to *rise*—thus making the hair "stand on end;" it also produces "goose-skin."

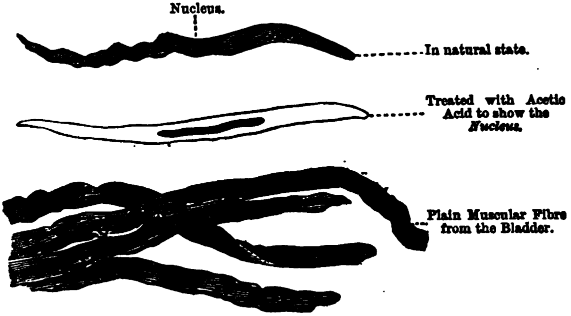

Nucleus.
In natural state.
Treated with Acetic Acid to show the *Nucleus*.
Plain Muscular Fibre from the Bladder.

Fig. 32. Smooth (Involuntary) Muscular Fibre.

Organic muscular fibre consists of minute elongated fusiform (spindle-shaped), flattish, *nucleated*, *contractile* fibre-*cells* of a pale yellowish colour, about $\frac{1}{4500}$ to $\frac{1}{3500}$ of an inch in *diameter*, and $\frac{1}{600}$ to $\frac{1}{300}$ of an inch in *length*. By their union, they form minute ribbon-like filaments or fibres, which do *not* contain any *sheath* or sarcolemma. The primitive *nucleated* cells of which they are composed readily separate when treated with nitric acid.

143. A Voluntary Muscle; that is, a muscle which acts according to, or is controlled by, the *impulses* of the will—consists of a *bundle of bundles* of striated muscular fibre. The smaller bundles are termed *fasciculi*, and the *sheath* of connective tissue, by which they are enclosed or invested, is termed the *fascia* of the muscle. It is abundantly supplied with nerves and blood-vessels.

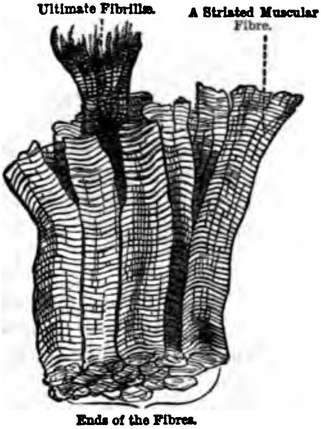


Fig. 33. Portion of a Voluntary Muscle.

The following Table shows the plan of structure of a voluntary muscle:—

- **Voluntary Muscle,**
  - Fasciculi,
    - Fibres,
      - Fibrillæ.
      - Sarcolemma.
    - Capillaries.
    - Nerves.
    - Connective Tissue.
  - Fascia.

144. Striated (Voluntary) Muscular Fibre, as seen under the microscope, consists of minute, pale yellowish, cross-marked, *contractile* fibres. Each *primitive* fibre is invested with a delicate *sheath* of fine, tough, elastic, transparent, structureless membrane, termed the *sarcolemma* or *myolemma*.

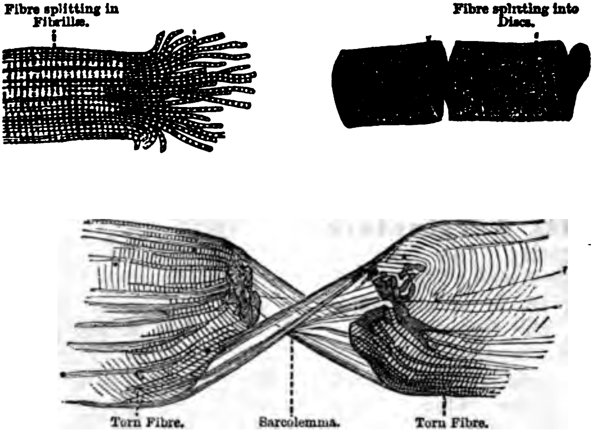


Fig. 34. Striated (Voluntary) Muscular Tissue.
The two upper figures *devoid* of Sarcolemma.

Each primitive fibre may be split up *longitudinally* into *fibrillæ*, and *transversely* into minute discs, as shown in the diagram. (See figs. 33 and 34.)

The primitive fibre itself contains neither blood-vessels nor connective tissue, but occasionally nuclei may be seen within its substance. The *sarcous* element, contained within the *sarcolemma*, consists of *syntonin*. The peculiar effect of the fine *striæ* (cross-marking) is apparently due to the fibres being composed of a series of *alternations* of a partially *opaque* with a more *transparent* substance.

A few hours after death the muscles of the body become hard and rigid—undergo "death-stiffening"—or *rigor mortis*, the various parts of the body retaining the position which they held when the *stiffening* commenced. This *death-stiffening* most probably results from the *coagulation* of a *liquid* contained in the substance of the muscular fibre. The *liquid*, if squeezed out of the fibre, will *coagulate* spontaneously; after a time it again liquifies, the body becoming soft and flaccid. If the *rigor mortis* sets in soon after death, it usually lasts but a short time; if it sets in late, it usually lasts much longer.

145. Nervous Tissue, or Neurine, comprises *two* essentially distinct kinds of structure, viz. :—the *fibrous*, and the *ganglionic vesicular* or *cellular*. The former are the essential components of the *nerves*, and the *interior* of the *brain*, the latter of the *ganglia* and the *outer* layer of the *brain*, and the *inner* portion of the *spinal cord*.

146. Primitive Nerve Fibre.—Ordinary nerve fibres or tubules consist during life of soft, flexible, fragile, *transparent*, oily-looking, parallel, sub-cylindrical fibres, described as having somewhat the appearance of fine glass-tubes filled with oil. During *life* they are perfectly *homogeneous*. (See fig. 35.)

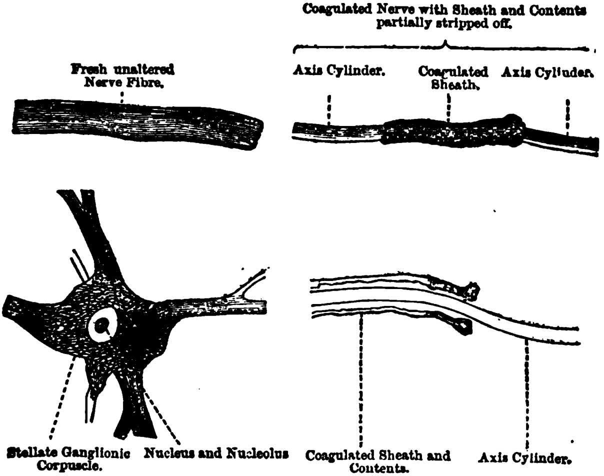

Coagulated Nerve with Sheath and Contents partially stripped off.
Fresh unaltered Nerve Fibre.
Axis Cylinder.
Coagulated Sheath.
Axis Cylinder.
Stellate Ganglionic Corpuscle.
Nucleus and Nucleolus
Coagulated Sheath and Contents.
Axis Cylinder.

Fig. 35. Nerve Fibre and Ganglionic Corpuscle

Immediately *after death*, *coagulation* of the nerve substance sets in, by which it separates or *differentiates* itself into different layers, viz.:—1, An *outer* structureless *membrane* forming a tube; 2, An *inner* grayish, *solid axis-cylinder*, which passes up the *middle* of the tube; 3, A fluid substance in the *interspace* between the *axis-cylinder* and the *outer* tube.

These various structures are respectively illustrated in the diagram of nerve fibre. (See fig. 35.)

The *axis-cylinder* of a nerve fibre is rendered very distinct, in the beautiful microscopic slides sold by the opticians, by immersion in ammoniacal solution of carmine, the *axis-cylinder* becoming deeply-coloured red by it, while the *tube-sheath* is comparatively unaffected, and appears as a pale ring surrounding it.

The diameter of the nerve fibres varies greatly, being greater at their commencement, and decreasing towards their terminations after they have left the *nerve-trunks.* Those in the nerve-trunks are from $\frac{1}{3000}$ to the $\frac{1}{2000}$ of an inch in diameter; those in the *gray matter* of the *brain* and *spinal cord* are $\frac{1}{15000}$ to $\frac{1}{10000}$ of an inch in diameter.

147. A Nerve or Nerve Trunk consists of a *bundle* of *nerve-fibres* surrounded by a *sheath* of connective tissue termed the *neurilemma.*

The fibres which do not unite with each other in the trunks lie parallel side by side. When, however, the nerve trunks enter special organs, or when they approach their terminations in the *skin*, the *muscles*, or elsewhere, the nerve-fibres divide, becoming finer and finer until they ultimately inosculate, or *terminate* in *loops* or otherwise in a manner not yet worked out by *histologists.* The finer *terminal* nervous filaments are not divisible into *tube-sheath*, *axis-cylinder* and *contents*, but in the present state of our knowledge seem to consist of *homogeneous* nerve substance.

Many of the terminal nerve-fibres which go to the skin appear to terminate in *spiral coils* which embrace or wind round the *tactile corpuscles.* (See *Tactile Corpuscles*). Other nerve-fibres terminate in the middle of the *Pacinian* corpuscles. The finer nerve-fibres of the brain and spinal cord often terminate in the caudate or stellale processes of the *nerve-corpuscles.*

148. Gelatinous Nerve Fibre. Besides the so-called *tubular nerve-fibres*, a second kind of fibre, consisting of smaller, softer, flattish, homogeneous yellowish-gray nerve filaments which contain *nuclei*, but do not *differentiate* in structure into sheath, axis-cylinder, &c., like those just described, are known to physiologists as *gelatinous nerve-fibres.*

The *olfactory nerves* and the nerves of the *sympathetic* or *ganglionic system* proper, consist mainly if not exclusively of *gelatinous nerve-fibre.* When these *fibres* are treated with acetic acid their *nuclei* become plainly visible.

149. The Chief Property of Nerve-Fibre, or as it has been termed its *neurility* or *excitability*, is its power of conveying or conducting *nervous force* or *stimulus* from the *cerebro-spinal axis* or a *ganglionic centre* by which a *muscle* is made to *contract*, or a *gland* to *secrete;* or by which external impression or irritation is transmitted from the skin, the organs of the senses, or any of the internal organs to the *brain* or *spinal* cord. Their function in this respect has been aptly compared with that of the *telegraph wires* in a *telegraphic system.*

The nerves, then, simply act as *conductors* of nervous *force* or *impression.* Helmholtz, Baxt, and Hirsch have estimated by means of induction (electric) currents made to act on a galvanometer, the *velocity* at which the nervous force or impulse *travels* in the motor nerves of a frog, at about 34 metres or 110 feet per second. It travels at different rates in different nerves, and the nerves of different animals.

150. Ganglionic Corpuscles, Nerve Cells, or Vesicular Neurine consists of minute spheroidal or stellate *nucleated cells* charged with finely *granular* matter containing a greater or less number of reddish or brown *pigment granules*, which give the *exterior* of the brain and *interior* of the spinal cord the peculiar pinkish-gray or *cineritious* appearance they present.

Nerve cells or *corpuscles* are of two kinds (1.) *Simple*, that is, having an *uninterrupted* outline, and being therefore spherical or ovoid, and more or less resembling in appearance glandular epithelial cells. (2.) *Caudate* or *stellate* (as shown in the diagram), that is, containing a number of tails or processes by which they become more or less *star-shaped*. (See fig. 35.)

The latter are termed *uni*-polar, *bi*-polar, *multi*-polar, according to the number of the processes they give off. These processes, which are *tubular*, contain granular matter. Some of them taper off to a point, others unite to the processes given off by other nerve-corpuscles, others again unite with the ends of ordinary nerve-fibre.

151. Function of the Nerve Corpuscles. The nerve corpuscles are very generally described as the *generators*, *sources*, or *originators* of *nervous force*. This statement however is only true with considerable modification.

They constitute the mass of the *exterior* of the *brain*, the *interior* of the *spinal cord* and of the substance of the *ganglia*, or the *nerve centres* at which *nervous force* is either *generated*, or nervous impressions are *radiated*, *transferred*, *diffused*, or *reflected*. (See *Brain*, &c.)

CHAPTER VI.

THE BLOOD.

152. The Blood, or *nutritive* fluid, is by far the most abundant and important fluid in the body: it has therefore been designated the "river of life."

Within the body in its *normal* or healthy state, it is entirely contained within a set of special vessels, termed *blood-vessels*, consisting of *arteries*, *veins*, and *capillaries*. It never escapes from these vessels into any other part of the body, except as a result of disease or injury, as in the case of *bruises* or *scurvy:* it is then said to be *extravasated*.

153. Appearance and Properties of the blood. The blood as it escapes from the body by a cut or injury, or when quite freshly drawn, *appears* to the unaided eye to be a *homogeneous*, somewhat viscid, bright *crimson* or *scarlet* fluid. It has a *saline* taste, is slightly *alkaline*, and is a little *heavier* than water, 1,055 parts by weight of *blood* being equal in *bulk* to 1,000 parts by weight of *water*. It has a slight peculiar *odour* or *halitus*, which is greatly increased by the addition of dilute sulphuric acid, containing about one-half of water. It is said that the blood of different animals may thus be readily distinguished by the *odour* evolved; this, however, is probably true of a few animals only.

About *one-half* of the blood contained in the body—that is that portion which is contained in the *veins* and in the *pulmonary arteries*—is of a *dark* purplish colour; this is termed *venous* blood.

Only that portion of the blood which is contained in the *arteries*, (and in the *pulmonary veins*), and freshly drawn blood which has been *exposed to the air*, possesses the bright *scarlet* colour usually deemed so characteristic of the blood. This is termed *aërated* or *arterial* blood.

If *dark venous* blood be shaken up in a bottle of *oxygen* gas, it will be immediately converted into bright *scarlet* blood, having all the properties of *arterial* blood. The same changes take place, though much more slowly, when blood is agitated in *common air*.

154. Magnified Blood. When a *very thin* layer of freshly drawn blood is examined by means of a powerful magnifying glass, it appears to consist of minute particles of a pale, *yellowish*, gritty substance floating in a *colourless* fluid. These minute gritty-looking bodies are the *corpuscles* of the blood.

To observe the *microscopic structure* of the blood accurately—

1. Take a slip of thin plate glass three inches long and one inch wide.
2. Twist a piece of thick string several times tightly round the middle of the last joint or end of the middle finger of the left hand.

3. Prick the end of the finger (which has now become purple and swollen because of the distension of the veins produced by the obstruction to the circulation caused by the ligature) with a sharp *clean* needle. A biggish drop of blood immediatley exudes, the operation causing little or no pain.
4. Smear a very *small quantity* of the blood thus drawn, so as to form a *very thin yellowish-looking layer* of blood on the middle of the glass slip. *Cover* immediately with a second plate of very thin glass.
5. Place the blood thus prepared under a microscope magnifying 300 diameters.

On looking through the microscope, a picture, very correctly represented by Fig. 36, which is drawn from an actual photograph of the appearance of a drop of blood, only the $\frac{1}{140}$ of an inch in diameter, as shown under the microscope, will be seen.

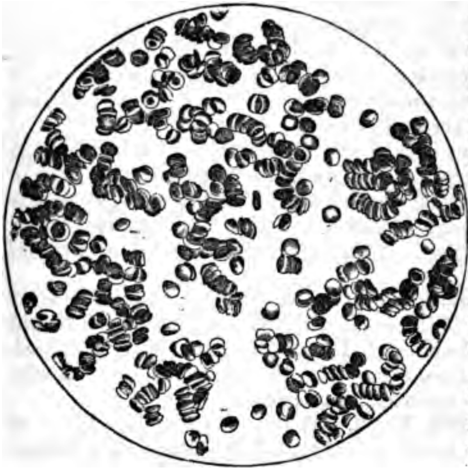


Fig. 36. Drop of Blood (Magnified).

155. Structural Character of the Blood.—The blood is thus seen to consist of (1) *red* and (2) *white* or colourless corpuscles; also, if examined under a much higher microscopic power, (3) of minute *oil globules*, floating in a nearly colourless transparent fluid, (4) the *liquor sanguinis* or blood plasma.

156. The General Composition of the Blood varies very considerably with the age, sex, temperament and health of the individual; also, with the time since the last meal was taken, with the part of the body from which the blood is drawn, and with other conditions. Copious *bleeding* very considerably *reduces* the proportionate number of *red corpuscles.* Animal food, the use of certain medicines, as those containing *iron*, &c., very materially *increases* their number. In general there are proportionally more *red* corpuscles in the blood of *men* than of *women*, and of *strong* men than of *weak* men, and in the blood of young and middle-aged adults than in that of children and *old* people.

One thousand parts of blood consist of about 500 parts of *liquor sanguinis*, and 500 parts of moist *red* and *white corpuscles.*

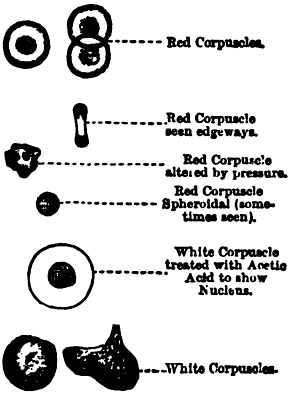

Red Corpuscles.
Red Corpuscle seen edgeways.
Red Corpuscle altered by pressure.
Red Corpuscle Spheroidal (sometimes seen).
White Corpuscle treated with Acetic Acid to show Nucleus.
White Corpuscles.

Fig 37. Human Blood Corpuscles.
Magnified 600 diameters.

The average composition of human blood may be stated approximatively as consisting in each 1,000 parts of—*water*, 780; globulin, 140; albumen, 70; fibrin, 2; fatty matters, 1½; extractive, 6½.

Composition of Human Blood.

Water,					779·0
Solids,	Corpuscles,	Haematin,	7	141·0	221·0
		Globulin,	134		
	Fibrin,			2·2	
	Albumen,			69·4	
	Fatty matters,	Serolin,	0·2	1·6	
		Phosphorized fat,	0·49		
		Cholesterin,	0·09		
		Saponified fat,	1·00		
	Extractive matters,			6·8	1,000·0

The *liquor sanguinis* contains most of the *chlorine* and the *soda* of the blood, thus differing chemically from the corpuscles, which contain most of the *fatty* substances, and the *phosphates; all* the *iron*, and most of the *potash*.

157. **The Red Corpuscles** of human blood consist of exceedingly *minute*, soft, flexible, elastic, pale yellowish, circular, *biconcave, non-nucleated* discs, with rounded edges.

Their diameters vary from about the $\frac{1}{4000}$ to the $\frac{1}{3000}$ of an inch. Their thickness is about $\frac{1}{5}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ of their diameter, and therefore varies from about the $\frac{1}{15000}$ to the $\frac{1}{9000}$ of an inch.

It has been roughly calculated that 10,000,000 red corpuscles would lay on one square inch of surface, and that 120,000,000,000 might be contained within the volume of one cubic inch.

It has also been estimated that one cubic inch of freshly drawn healthy human blood actually contains 84,000,000 of red corpuscles, and 240,000 *white* or *colourless* corpuscles. Dr. Draper, the celebrated American physiologist, has estimated that 20,000,000 of these red corpuscles are *born*, and 20,000,000 of them *die* per second, or with each beat of the heart.

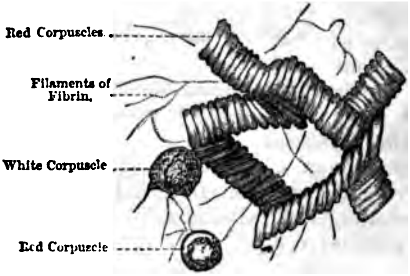


Fig. 38. Red Corpuscles of Human Blood arranged in Rouleaux.
Magnified about 600 diameters.

158. Under the microscope these little bodies may be seen rolling and turning about in the *liquor sanguinis*, and arranging themselves in little piles, or *rouleaux*—like piles of small coin seen edgewise. When they *absorb oxygen* they become flattened, their walls becoming thicker and more opaque, and possibly more reflective.

When they absorb carbonic acid gas the cells are said to become rounder and larger, and their walls thinner, more transparent, and darker.

159. The Form and Size of the Red Corpuscles varies in different animals. They are *circular* and *biconcave* in nearly all the mammalia, being smallest in the *deer* tribe,—are *oval* in birds, reptiles, and fishes, being largest in the reptiles. The following diagram (fig. 39) gives their shape, also their longest diameters in fractions of an inch.

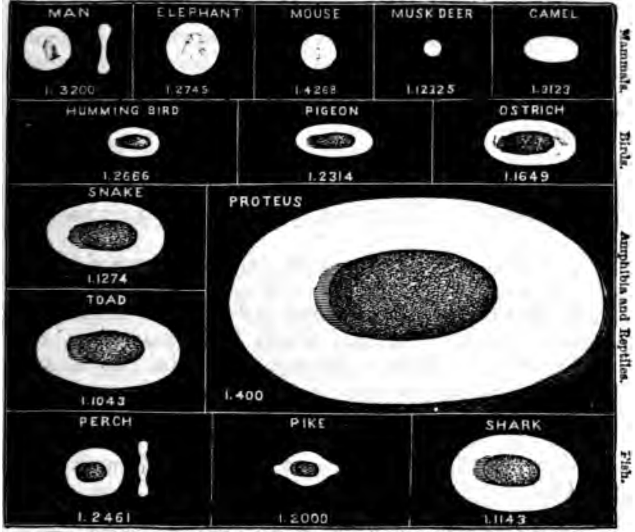


Fig 39. Shapes of Blood Corpuscles (red) of Various Animals.

160. The Structure of a Red Corpuscle is not even yet positively determined. It is usually described as consisting of an *interior semi*-fluid, or even quite fluid substance, surrounded by an *outer* substance of gradually increasing density, forming a not very definite or distinctly marked *cell wall*. Some physiologists still describe the red corpuscle as a *homogeneous structureless* mass.

161. The interior substance of the corpuscle consists of *hæmoglobin*, or as it is sometimes variously termed *cruor*, or *cruoro-globulin*, or *hæmato-globulin*. This compound may be resolved into two substances:—*hæmatine*, the peculiar colouring substance of the blood, and an albuminous substance termed *globulin*.

Prepare a *second* glass slide (as described in section 154), but previous to covering the blood up with the thin covering glass, dilute with water. When examined under the microscope the red corpuscles will be observed to swell out their *sides*, losing their hollow, sunken, *dish-like* forms, becoming rounded and globular, the corpuscles ultimately bursting by *endosmose* or absorption of liquid.

When the *red corpuscles* are immersed in solutions of greater density than their own substance, they lose fluid by *exosmose*, shrivelling up, and losing their *normal* shape.

The red corpuscles have been variously termed *blood-cells*, *blood-corpuscles*, *blood-discs*, *blood-globules*, &c.

162. The Colour of the Blood is due to the *cruorin* or *hæmatin*, as it is termed, which is contained in the red corpuscles. This substance exists in two states, viz.:—that of *purple* cruorin, in which it is combined with *less* oxygen, and *scarlet* cruorin, in which it is combined with *more* oxygen.

Venous blood being *deficient* in oxygen is now supposed to owe its *dark purple* colour to the presence of the *lower* oxide of cruorin.

Arterial blood being supplied with *excess* of oxygen, is supposed to owe its *bright scarlet* colour to the presence of the *higher* oxide of cruorin.

That the colour of the blood is not due, as was formerly supposed, to the presence of *iron*, is shown by the fact that *hæmatin* still retains its peculiar *red* colour after all its *iron* has been extracted.

That the *dark* colour of *venous* blood is simply an *optical* effect due to the greater *thinness* and consequent *transparency* of the cell wall of the *venous* corpuscle, is also a theory which is now being generally abandoned by physiologists.

163. The Detection of Blood Stains in case of murder may, in general, be effected with great certainty by means of the *microscope* and the *micro-spectroscope.*

Human blood may readily be distinguished not only from common dark or red paint, but also from that of many other animals by a clever microscopist, by means of the *appearance*, *shape*, and *size* of the discs, or *red corpuscles.* (See fig. 39).

The *micro-spectroscope* consists of a peculiar combination of glass *prisms* attached to the microscope, by means of which an object may be examined with the aid of special light obtained from any specific part of the *spectrum.*

A minute speck of blood, weighing not more than the *one-millionth* part of a grain, will, when examined under the *micro-spectroscope*, give certain well-marked characteristic dark lines, called *absorption bands*, due to the presence of *cruorin.* By suitable treatment the *cruorin*, notwithstanding the exceedingly minute portion present, may be changed respectively from the *higher* to the *lower* oxide, or, *vice versa*, the well-marked character of the *absorption bands* varying accordingly.

164. Function of the Red Corpuscles.—The chief *function* of the *red corpuscles* of the blood is to act as "*carriers* of oxygen." They *absorb* large quantities of *oxygen* in the *lungs*, and *carry* and *deliver* it over to the *tissues*, even in the most remote parts of the body, thus *vivifying* them and enabling them to perform their various functions.

Professor Stokes has shown that it is probable that the chief agent by which they *absorb*, and afterwards deliver up their *oxygen*, is the *cruorin* they contain.

It must not, however, be supposed that the *red corpuscles* leave or *pass out* of the capillaries; on the contrary, they hand over the oxygen they contain in solution, passing it through the walls of the capillaries by the process of *exosmosis.* On the other hand, the oxygen having done its work in *oxidizing the tissues*, the *burnt* or *oxidized* tissue is *passed back* through their delicate thin walls *into* the capillaries in a state of solution, as *urea, carbonic acid, water*, &c., by the process of *endosmosis.* (See *Endosmosis*, section 103.)

Blood *deprived* of its red corpuscles will only absorb 1-13th of the quantity of oxygen it dissolved in its *normal* state. Blood in this state is quite useless for all purposes of *transfusion* or vivification.

165. The Oxygen in feeble Chemical Union with the Blood.—When *pyrogallic acid* is exposed to the oxygen of the air, it readily enters into *combination* with it; but when it is mixed with the blood, it does *not* combine with its absorbed oxygen. It has, therefore, been supposed by some physiologists that the oxygen in the blood is not held in a mere state of *mechanical solution*, but is held in a state of loose *chemical combination* by some substance in the corpuscle.

166. Transfusion of Blood.—If blood, which has been deprived of its fibrin by whipping,* be injected into the veins of a human being who has nearly bled to death, he will sometimes recover almost as if by magic. Valuable lives have thus been saved by the transfusion of blood into the body of the patient from the arm of his friend.

The same results take place in the lower animals; even the blood of a different animal, if of a nearly allied species, will produce this result. If the difference of species be great, immediate death may ensue.

If, however, the blood be *deprived* of its *red corpuscles* before it is injected, it will produce no such effects of restoration or *re-vivification.*

167. The White or Colourless Corpuscles of the blood are minute pearly, grayish, semi-transparent, spheroidal, contractile, roughish-looking, nucleated bodies, about

---

* By "whipping" is meant the vigorously stirring up freshly-drawn blood, by means of a *birch* rod or bunch of twigs, until all the *fibrin* has *coagulated* and *deposited*, after which the blood will not coagulate.

,500th of an inch in diameter (See fig. 37). In a
f health the blood contains 400 to 500 times as
red as *white* corpuscles.

white corpuscle consists of an outer *cell wall*
bursts when placed in water), of a fluid con-
more or less granular matter, and a *nucleus.*
ucleus is rendered more distinct by immersing the
cle in dilute *acetic acid.* (See fig. 37.)

When the white corpuscles are carefully watched
engthened period as they float in the blood-*plasma,*
re observed to undergo considerable change of
stretching portions of themselves out in the form
esses or arms, in first one direction, and then in
r, thus manifesting a sort of independent life of
wn, and very closely imitating the nature, pro-
, and behaviour of the *amœba,* one of the very
forms of animal life.

very difficult to separate the *white* corpuscles
he *fibrin* of the blood, to which they readily adhere
process of coagulation.

Origin of the White Corpuscles.—In the *early* life
embryo, the *heart* and *blood-vessels* consist of solid
of cells. The outer layers of these cells gradu-
evelope into the tissues, forming the walls of
arteries, and veins; while the interior of these
become hollowed out into cavities, by the sepa-
and detachment of the interior cells, which,
thus liberated, form the first blood-cells or cor-
of animal life. These consist entirely of *white*
urless *nucleated* corpuscles Their *nuclei* probably
rds develope into the *red corpuscles.*

Functions of the White Corpuscles.—The func-
f the white corpuscles are only partially deter-
but they are supposed—

o develop the *red* corpuscles from their *nuclei.*

hey are supposed to assist in developing the *fibrin*
liquor sanguinis.

The Liquor Sanguinis, or Blood Plasma, is the
transparent, colourless, or slightly yellow and

slightly viscid, saline, *albuminous* liquid in which the *red* and *white corpuscles* float.

It consists chiefly of a very dilute solution of albumen, fibrin, fatty matters (serolin), and certain salts, chiefly sodium chloride (common salt), and tribasic phosphate of soda.

1,000 parts of *liquor sanguinis* contain 60 to 70 of albumen, and 2 to 3 of *fibrin.*

The phosphate of soda probably aids it in *dissolving* and holding the *carbonic acid* contained in the blood.

172. **Functions of the Liquor Sanguinis** :—

1. The *liquor sanguinis* floats the *red* and *white* corpuscles of the blood, thus conveying them to all parts of the body.

2. The *liquor sanguinis* permeates the walls of the capillaries; and after thus escaping, irrigates and bathes the tissues, which appropriate the *nutritive material* they require. This (nutrition of the tissues) is probably its *chief* function.

3. It receives the products of the waste tissues and distributes them to the various *organs of excretion*, by which they are removed from the system.

173. **Coagulation of the Blood** (from Lat. *coagulo*, I curdle).—Let the student go to the butcher, and get him to collect some blood in a small basin in his presence, and let him watch the changes it shortly undergoes.

(1.) In from three to ten minutes the whole mass of blood in the basin *sets* into a soft, red, gelatinous, *homogeneous-looking* mass.

(2.) Shortly afterwards, small drops of a transparent yellowish fluid (the *serum*) begin to ooze out on its upper surface.

(3.) The *gelatinous red* mass, now gradually contracting, *squeezes* out the *serum* on all sides, until the bulk of this fluid becomes two to three times the bulk of the solid red mass which now, having much greater firmness, constitutes the *clot*, *cruor*, or *crassamentum* of the blood.

174. The *coagulation* of the blood thus comprises essentially *two* distinct processes: *first*, a *setting* of the

blood; *second*, a sort of rough analysis, or separation of the blood into *serum* and *clot*.

175. The following table shows the comparative composition of *living* and *coagulated* blood:—

Living blood, . .	Liquor sanguinis,	Serum.
		Fibrin.
	Corpuscles, . .	Red.
		White.
Coagulated blood,	Serum, ...	Water.
		Albumen.
		Salts.
	Clot, ...	Red Corpuscles.
		White ,,
		Fibrin.

176. **Serum** (from Lat. *serum*, whey).—The serum of the blood is the pale yellowish, slightly viscid, greasy *albuminous fluid* which is *squeezed* out from the clot during the process of coagulation. It consists of the liquid portion of the *blood-plasma*, from which the *fibrin*, or so much of the *fibrinogen* as is capable of giving rise to its *formation*, has separated by spontaneous coagulation.

177. **The Serosity** (from Lat. *serum*, whey) of the blood is the feeble aqueous solution of the *salts* of the *serum* which separates from the *serum* when it is coagulated by *heat;* in other words, the *serosity* of the blood is the incoagulable portion of the serum. The serosity also contains minute quantities of *extractive* and *fatty* matters.

178. **Magnified Coagulated Blood.**—Prepare two additional glass slides with drops of blood as described in section 154; but in this case it is better not to cover the drops of blood (which should be very small) with the thin glass covering, but to place them under a damp glass tumbler to prevent their *drying*. Add a few granules of *common salt* to one of the drops before placing it under the tumbler, allow both of them to stand for 20 to 40 minutes, then examine them under a microscope magnifying 300 to 400 times (linearly).

The *first* drop which has *not* been treated with common salt may now be inverted, or placed in any position without causing it to run. It will by this time have formed into a solid *gelatinous* mass, or in other words, *coagulation* will have set in.

This gelatinous drop, when placed under the microscope, is seen to consist of a *network* of fine *fibrils* or filaments, enclosing and squeezing up within its *meshes* or interstices masses of red corpuscles. As coagulation becomes more perfect, the corpuscles are squeezed more closely together, while the serum, or clear liquid portion, is gradually driven out of the mass. This altered structure or *fibrillation* may be best observed by examining the drop of blood on the glass slide several hours after it was prepared.

The fibrils consist of *fibrin.* This substance, which is said to exist in the *blood-plasma* or *liquor sanguinis* in a state of liquidity, is gradually deposited in the form of soft solid fibres, which enclose the corpuscles as just described, and continue to contract until the process of coagulation is completed.

The *white corpuscles* disappear, apparently absorbed in the substance of the *fibrin* during this process.

179. Place the *second* drop of blood, which has been treated with common salt, and which still remains liquid, under the microscope. No such *fibrillation* can be detected: Therefore *coagulation* has been artificially prevented.

180. Cause of the Coagulation of the Blood.—The *apparent* cause of the coagulation and partial separation of the constituents of the blood, is the spontaneous solidification and fibrillation of the *fibrin* of the blood, just described; but the real question to be determined is what is the cause of this *spontaneous* coagulation or solidification of the *fibrin.* Many theories of the true cause of the coagulation of the blood have at various times been propounded and discarded. By some it has been regarded as a purely *vital* process, by others as consequent on the escape of *ammonia* from the blood.

In all cases the *blood corpuscles* are supposed to be *passive* during this process.

181. The *theory* of coagulation accepted by Professors Huxley and Foster, and founded upon the facts observed

by Dr. A. Buchanan of Glasgow, and by Alexander Schmidt of Leipsic, is that *fibrin* in *solution* does not exist in ordinary living blood as it circulates in the veins and arteries; but the blood contains two distinct principles, viz., *globulin* and *fibrinogen*, which exist in it in separate states. When the blood is withdrawn from the influence of living matter in the blood-vessels, these two substances, the *globulin* and the *fibrinogen* unite—this union resulting in the formation of *fibrin*, which is deposited in the *solid* form, and which afterwards encloses and contracts on the blood-corpuscles, as previously described.

If this theory is correct, the coagulation of the blood is a purely *physico-chemical*, in contradistinction to *vital* process, as the following experiments will show:—

EXPERIMENT I.—Place some blood *serum* in a glass; dilute largely with water. Pass a current of *carbonic acid* through the mixture as long as any *precipitate* (a white powdery substance) falls; pour off the fluid contents; wash the white powdery precipitate, which consists of *globulin*. Dissolve the globulin in a very dilute solution of soda.

The globulin, or, as it is frequently termed, *fibrino-plastic globulin*, having thus undergone the two-fold chemical processes of *precipitation* and *solution*, must necessarily have lost all traces of *vitality*.

EXPERIMENT II.—Place some *serous fluid*, as that obtained from the *pericardial sac*, in a glass vessel, dilute, pass a current of *carbonic acid*, wash the white powdery precipitate (which consists of *fibrinogen*), and re-dissolve (as in Experiment I.) in a very weak solution of soda.

The solution of *fibrinogen* as thus prepared must necessarily, like that of the *fibrino plastic-globulin* previously described, have lost all traces of vitality.

EXPERIMENT III.—Add a portion of the solution of *fibrino-plastic globulin* (prepared in Experiment I.) to the solution of *fibrinogen* (prepared in Experiment II.), a clot of *fibrin* is formed.

EXPERIMENT IV.—Add in a test tube or glass vessel a portion of the solution of *globulin* (prepared in Experiment I.) to the *serous* fluid obtained from the *pericardial sac* of a sheep or an ox, a clot of *fibrin* will be formed.

EXPERIMENT V.—Add a portion of the solution of *fibrinogen* (prepared in Experiment II.) to the *serum* of the blood of a sheep or an ox, a clot of *fibrin* will again be formed.

EXPERIMENT VI.—Mix in a glass vessel a portion of the *serous* fluid from the *pericardial sac*, or any other *serous* cavity, with the *serum* of the blood (from which all the fibrin has separated by coagulation), a clot of fibrin will again be formed.

182. These experiments clearly point to the *physico-chemical* origin of the phenomenon of *coagulation*. It still, however, remains to be explained why *contact* with *living matter*, or whatever other agency it may be that is exerted in the blood-vessels, causes the continued separation, or in other words, prevents *the union* of the globulin and the fibrinogen, and the consequent *formation* and *coagulation* of the *fibrin* in the *interior* of the living blood-vessels.

183. Wounds inflicted a few hours *after* death may readily be detected by the absence of clot about the mouth of the wound.

Bleeding to death is often prevented by nature's stopping the mouths of the injured blood-vessels with *plugs* of *clot* or coagulated blood.

The coagulation of the blood also stops *internal* bleeding, and promotes the *healing* of incised wounds by joining their adjacent surfaces together.

When *pus* and some other substances get into the blood, they sometimes cause death by setting up the process of coagulation, by which *plugs of clot*, which stop the circulation, are formed in the principal arteries.

184. Conditions which Accelerate Coagulation.

Moderate warmth.

Rest.

Contact with solid bodies, especially those with rough surfaces.

Free exposure to air.

Shallow vessels.

The addition of a limited quantity of water.

Conditions which Retard Coagulation.

Contact with the walls of living blood-vessels.

A temperature of above 120 deg. or below 40 deg. F.

Deep vessels.

Exclusion from air.

The addition of alkaline solution, or of salts of the earth and alkalies; also by strong acids.

Death by suffocation from carbonic oxide, carburetted hydrogen, &c.

185. The Buffy Coat of the blood is the *whitish* or *buff*-coloured layer of clot which sometimes appears at the upper surface of the ordinary *red* clot. It may be formed under the following circumstances:—

a. When the *red cells* sink more *quickly*, or the *fibrin* is deposited and coagulates more *slowly* than usual.

b. When there is a deficiency of the red corpuscles of the blood, as in certain diseases, in which case the *upper* layer of *fibrin* of the *clot* remains *whitish*, because of the *absence* of enclosed red corpuscles.

186. Cupped appearance of the Blood.—When the *buffy coat* is produced as explained in (*a*), it usually contracts more than the rest of the clot, drawing up the sides of the remainder, and giving the upper surface a "concave or cup-like" appearance.

This phenomenon is frequently presented by inflammatory blood.

187. Gases in the Blood.—The blood in the living body always contains *oxygen*, *carbonic acid*, and *nitrogen* gases. 100 volumes of blood contain from 40 to 50 volumes of these gases, of which about 30 volumes consist of carbonic acid, about 15 of oxygen, and about 2 volumes of nitrogen.

The *oxygen* of the blood is chiefly retained by the *red* corpuscles, the *carbonic acid* chiefly by the bicarbonate and triphosphate of soda.

These two gases probably exist in the blood partly free and partly in a state of loose chemical combination.

188. Functions of the Blood.—The following are the chief functions of the blood:—

(*a*) It *nourishes*, builds up, renovates or repairs, and vitalizes or revivifies the various tissues.

(*b*) It conveys oxygen to the various tissues, thus supplying the agent by whose chemical union with these tissues the heat, and *nervous*, *mental*, and other *vital* forces are developed in the body.

(*c*) It warms and moistens all parts of the body.

(*d*) It receives the *refuse*, the liquified product of the *oxidized* or waste tissues of the various parts of the body, and conveys them to the various *excretory* organs by which they are *eliminated* from the system.

(*e*) It supplies the various *glands* with the material out of which they *elaborate* or *secrete* the fluids or other substances necessary for the proper performance of the function of digestion, and of the other *functions* of the body.

189. Gains and Losses of the Blood.—During the course of its circulation the blood is *continually* losing and *gaining* material.

It *gains* matter, viz., *oxygen*, as it passes through the lungs; *waste products* (from the *tissues*) as it traverses the capillaries; exuded *blood plasma*, and probably other substances, from the lymphatics; *sugar* (glucose), and possibly *white corpuscles*, from the liver; also, possibly, *white corpuscles* from the *spleen* and *ductless glands*.

The blood *constantly loses* matter:—*carbonic acid*, *aqueous vapour*, and *urea* by the *lungs*; water, *urea*, &c., by the *kidneys*; the materials of *bile* by the *liver*; the materials *selected* by the *tissues* for their repair and renovation; *aqueous* vapour, *carbonic acid*, and *urea* by the *skin*.

The blood constantly *gains heat* in *itself*, and from the *tissues* (by oxidation and combustion); but it constantly *loses heat* on the *free surfaces* of the body, chiefly by *radiation* and *evaporation*.

In addition to the above, the blood *gains* matter *intermittently* from certain sources, viz., oxidized or waste tissue; products from the muscles; liquified nutriment from the alimentary canal; water, &c., absorbed by the *skin*.

The blood also *loses intermittently* by many of the secreting glands, as the salivary glands, &c.

For difference between Blood and Lymph (see section on *Lymph*).

CHAPTER VII.

CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD.—THE HEART AND BLOOD-VESSELS.

190. General Purpose of the Circulation.—The *Blood* constitutes the ever-flowing river of the human system. Its presence in a state of purity, at all points of the organism—to *render up* the *vitalizing* oxygen and the elements of *nutrition* and *repair;* also, to receive and remove the *poisonous* products of combustion, disintegration, and waste, so that they may be either utilized or expelled from the system, as the case may require—constitutes an ever-recurring necessity for the perpetual movement or circulation of the blood, from the first dawn of life to its ultimate close. We now proceed to discuss and explain the nature of the *mechanism* and the *forces* by which this movement of *circulation* is initiated and sustained.

191. Circulation (from Lat. *circulo,* I encompass) is the process by which the blood is driven *out* from the heart, conveyed by the arteries and *arterial capillaries, to* the various parts of the body, and again returned *to* it by the *venous capillaries* and the *veins,* the whole forming one continuous movement or journey.

The "circulation" is sometimes described under the terms *greater* or *systemic* circulation, *lesser* or *pulmonary* circulation, and a *subordinate* branch of the systemic circulation, termed the *portal* circulation.

The *greater circulation* is that by which the blood is sent out from the *left* side of the heart, distributed by the *arteries* through the system, and returned by the *veins* to the *right* side of the heart.

The *lesser circulation* is that by which the blood is sent out from the *right* side of the heart to the lungs, and returned from them to its *left* side.

The *portal circulation* comprises that portion of the systemic circulation by which the blood, distributed to the stomach, liver, spleen, pancreas, and the intestines, is collected by the *vena porta*, and distributed through the substance of the liver, on its way to the inferior *vena cava* which it reaches by the *hepatic* veins.

The *heart*, the *arteries*, the *veins*, and the *capillaries* constitute the chief *organs of circulation*, and are designated the "*circulatory system.*"

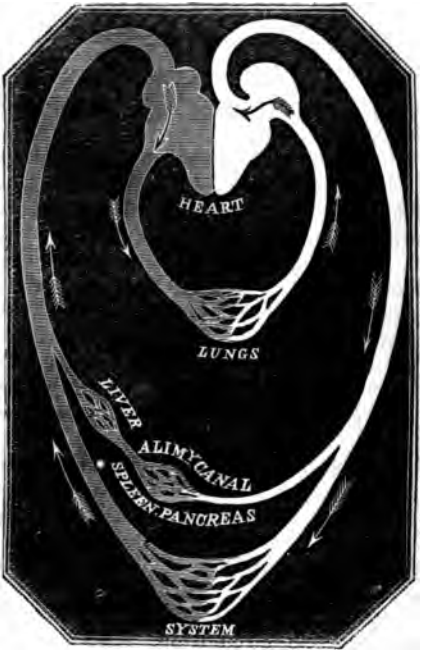


Fig. 40. Theoretic Circulation.

192. Position and Size of the Heart.—The heart is situated in the *mediastinum* or central part of the cavity of the thorax, immediately under the lower two-thirds of the sternum or breast-bone. It is almost entirely surrounded by the two lungs. Its base is directed backwards and upwards, being supported chiefly by the great blood-vessels. Its apex, or lower end, is turned *forwards* and *downwards*, pointing to, obtruding upon, and to a certain extent displacing the left lung; its *apex* being placed nearly opposite the interval between the 5th and 6th ribs, may be felt by the hand striking against the walls of the chest during the *beating* of the heart. (See figs. 2, 3, and 41 and 43.)

The heart is about 5 inches long, 3½ inches broad, and 2¼ inches thick. Its average weight in the male is ten to twelve ounces, in the female eight to ten ounces. It forms about $\frac{1}{169}$ of the weight of the whole body of the male, and $\frac{1}{149}$ of that of the female.

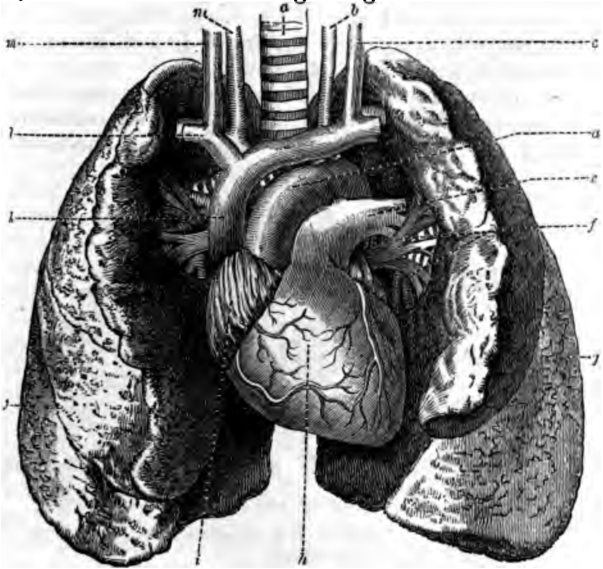


Fig. 41. Lungs and Heart.

a, Top of Trachea. *b*, Left Carotid Artery. *c*, Left Jugular Vein. *d*, Arch of Aorta. *e*, Pulmonary Artery. *f*, Bronchi and Blood-vessels. *g*, Left Lung. *h*, Right Ventricle. *i*, Right Auricle. *j*, Third Lobe of Right Lung. *k*, Superior Vena Cava. *l*, Right Subclavian Vein. *m*, Right Jugular Vein. *n*, Right Carotid Artery.

193. The Heart, which is a kind of *force-pump*, is the principal organ of circulation. From it the blood acquires the *propulsive* force by which it performs the various movements just described.

The heart is a hollow, conical, fleshy bag, about the size of a man's fist. It consists of involuntary but *striated* muscular fibre. The *heart* is divided by *septa* and *valves* into *four cavities* which have no *direct* communication with each other; that is, the blood on one side of the heart cannot pass over to the *cavities* on the other side of the heart, without passing through the blood-vessels in the lungs.

The heart is completely enveloped in a closed sac of *serous* membrane, termed the *pericardium.*

The human heart is usually described as containing two distinct sides (a right and a left) separated by a fleshy wall, termed the *median septum* of the heart.

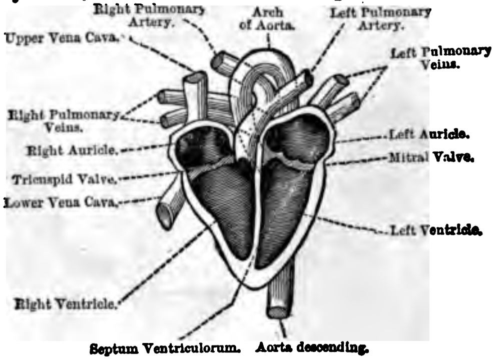


Fig. 42.—Theoretical Section of the Human Heart, seen from the front.

Really the heart of man, of birds, and of the mammalia may be said to consist of two complete hearts—a right and a left heart—each heart corresponding to the single complete heart of a fish; the human heart thus forming a *double* heart, and the circulatory movement set up by it a double circulation, termed respectively the *greater* or *systemic* circulation, and the *lesser* or *pulmonary circulation.*

The right and left sides of the heart each contain two *cavities*—viz., an *upper* one with *thinner* walls, termed an *auricle;* and a *lower* one with *thicker* walls, termed a ventricle,

194. The Auricles, or *upper* chambers of the heart, are separated from, and open into, the *ventricles* by means of transverse constrictions, each of which is strengthened by a fibrous ring, termed the *zona annularis:* these form the auriculo-ventricular openings, to the edges of which the valves of the heart, the *mitral* and the *tricuspid* valves, which close or open these cavities, are attached.

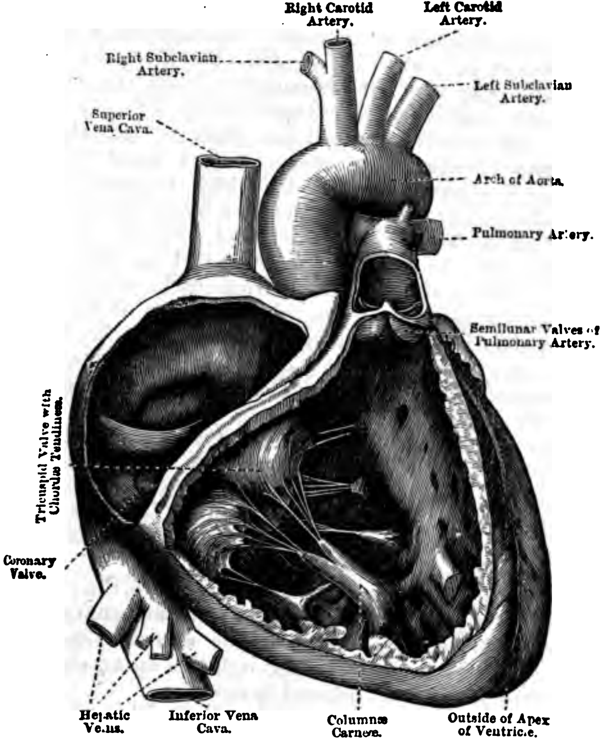


Fig. 43. Right Side of Heart.

195. The *walls* of the auricles are comparatively *thin;* the passage of the blood into the ventricles depending less upon the *propulsive* power exerted by the walls of the auricles, than upon the *suction* consequent upon the *dilatation* of the cavities of the ventricles.

The right auricle communicates directly with the *superior* and *inferior* venæ cavæ; the *inferior vena cava* only being protected by a valve—the *Eustachian valve.* The orifice by which it communicates with the *right ventricle* is guarded by the *tricuspid* valve. (See fig. 43.)

The *left auricle* communicates directly with the four *pulmonary veins* which return *purified* blood from the lungs. Its lower opening, by which it communicates with the left ventricle, is guarded by the *mitral valve.*

196. The Ventricles (from Lat. *venter*, stomach), are the two lower and *thicker* walled cavities of the heart. They are separated from each other by the ventricular portion of the *median septum* of the heart. The walls of the *left* ventricle are much thicker than of the *right.* Each ventricle is capable of containing four to five ounces of blood. The ventricles are a little larger than the auricles.

The *pulmonary artery,* the lower end of which is protected by semi-lunar valves, opens into the *right ventricle.* When the right ventricle *contracts,* the tricuspid valve *closes,* and the *venous blood* is driven out of the ventricle through the pulmonary artery into the lungs to be oxidized.

197. The *left ventricle* opens into the *aorta,* the entrance of which is protected by the *aortic* (semi-lunar) *valves.* When this *ventricle* contracts, the *mitral valve* closes, and the blood is *propelled* through the *aorta,* and by it is transmitted to the general system.

As the *muscular force* required to drive the blood through the general system is much greater than that required to propel it through the *lungs* only, the walls of the left ventricle are much more largely supplied with *muscular fibre,* or in other words, are *thicker* than those of the *right* ventricle.

The *columnæ carneæ* are rounded muscular columns which project from the sides of the ventricles (see fig.

43). They are well shown on the inner surface of the ventricles of a sheep's heart.

The *columnæ carneæ*, to which the minute tendinous cords (*chordæ tendineæ*) are anchored, are termed *columnæ papillares.* (See fig. 43.)

198. The *chordæ tendineæ* are the minute white tendinous cords (shown in the diagram), by which the valves of the heart are anchored so as to close up the auriculo-ventricular openings. Were these cords to be cut or broken, the flaps of the valves would be carried through into the auricles on the contraction of the ventricles, and thus become useless.

As the distance from the walls of the ventricles to the valves varies during their contraction, the length of the *chordæ tendinæ* remaining uniform some adjustment is needed to adapt them to the required length; this adjustment is effected by the *carneæ columnæ* (fleshy columns) to which their lower extremities are attached.

199. Movements of the Heart.—When the two auricles become charged with blood, the right with *venous* blood from the *venæ cavæ*, the left with *arterial* blood from the *pulmonary veins*, they gradually and simultaneously contract, driving their contents into the ventricles. This contraction constitutes the *systole* of the auricles.

When the ventricles, which dilate to receive the blood from the auricles (the valves being open), have become thus charged with blood, after a short pause they begin to *contract*, and thus simultaneously both close their valves and propel their contents—those of the right auricle into the *pulmonary artery*, and thence to the *lungs*—those of the *left ventricle* into the aorta, and thence to the general system, as previously described.

These contractions constitute the *systoles* (from Gr. *sustello*, I contract) of the ventricles. The contractions or *systoles* of the auricles and ventricles take place alternately—that is, while the *ventricles* are *contracting*, the *auricles* are *dilating*.

The dilatation or expansion of these cavities is termed their *diastole* (from Gr. *diastello*, I expand).

200. The *beating of the heart*, felt by the hand placed over the chest, is produced by the *systole* of the ventricles, which suddenly causes, from the peculiar arrangement of the muscular fibre of the heart, the apex to bend upwards so as to kick against the side of the chest, this movement being increased by the stretching and elongation of the *aorta* by the blood suddenly forced into it.

The movements of the heart thus take place in the following order:—

(*a.*) The walls of both *auricles* contract simultaneously.

(*b.*) Immediately afterwards the two *ventricles* contract simultaneously.

(*c.*) Then comes a *pause* of much longer interval than that occupied by these double contractions, after which the movements are repeated as before.

The auricles are *dilating* all the time the ventricles are *contracting*.

201. Course of the Blood through the Heart. (See next page, fig. 44.)

1. The *venous* blood enters the *right* auricle through the *superior vena cava*, and the Eustachian valve of the *inferior vena cava*.
2. It then passes (the Eustachian valve having closed) through the auriculo-ventricular opening (the passage between the *tricuspid valve*) into the *right ventricle.*
3. It then passes (driven by the contraction of the right ventricle and the closure of the *tricuspid valve*)through the *pulmonary arteries* into the *lungs.*
4. It is poured *back* (oxidized and purified) by the four *pulmonary veins* into the *left auricle.*
5. The *left auricle* now contracts, and drives the blood through the *left auriculo-ventricular* opening (the *mitral valve* being open) into the *left ventricle.*
6. The *left ventricle* now contracts, the *mitral valve* simultaneously closing, while the aortic valve opens, and drives the blood through the *aorta* into the general system.

202. Experimental Proof of the Course of the Blood through the Heart.—Procure a sheep's heart, having instructed the butcher *not* to cut off the blood vessels within a few inches of the heart itself. Tie up one of the *venæ cavæ*—insert a glass tube into the other—inject water into the heart through the tube, it will flow out of the *pulmonary arteries* and will not reach the *left* side of the heart.

Repeat the experiment by injecting water through one of the *pulmonary veins* (the others being tied) the water will flow out of the *aorta*, and not through the *right* side of the heart.

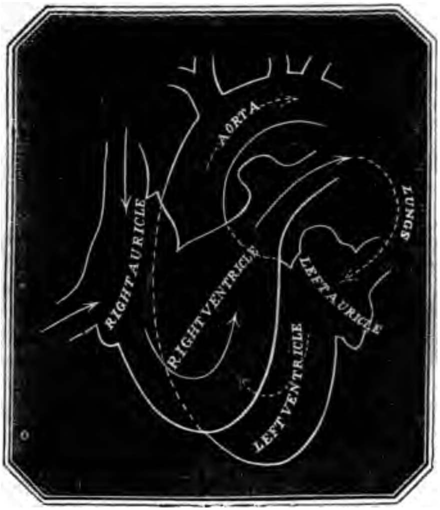


Fig. 44. Diagram of the Circulation through the Heart, (after Dalton.)

If the *tops* of the ventricles be cut off and the ventricles filled with water, the aorta and pulmonary veins being tied, the thin membranous valves will be pressed upwards, becoming tightly stretched, and the whole action of the valves clearly visible.

203. Valves of the Heart (from Lat. *valvæ*, folding doors).—The valves are tough, flexible, *membranous* structures, which are attached to the fibrous borders of the openings into the heart, and *between* its upper and lower chambers. (See Figs. 43 to 45.)

They are so arranged as only to permit of the passage of fluid in one direction, any attempt at *reflux* causing the blood to get *behind* the flaps or segments of the valves, and thus force them tightly against the openings, so as to close them the more effectually in proportion as the backward pressure is increased. But for the *chordæ* *tendineæ*, the pointed flaps of the tricuspid and central valves would be driven through *into* the *auricles.*

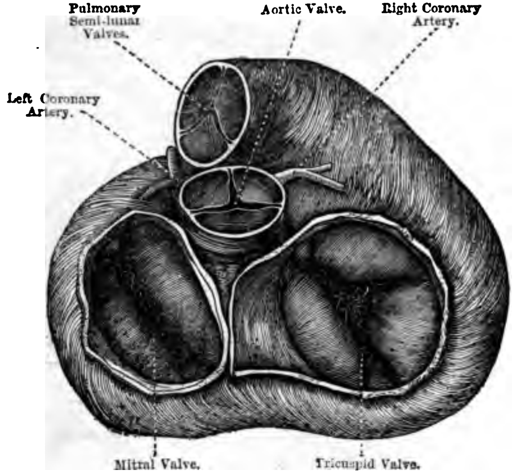


Fig. 45. The Top of Heart, the Auricles being dissected off.

The valves, which consist chiefly of connective tissue, are formed by the duplicature of the *lining membrane* of the interior of the heart, their substance being strengthened by an additional layer of *fibrous tissue,* possibly containing muscular fibre.

204. The heart is supplied with *six* valves, *four* of the principal of which, viz., the *tricuspid* and the *pulmonary* semi-lunar valves of the right side of the heart, and the *mitral* and *aortic* (semi-lunar) valves on the left side, are shown in fig. 45. The right auricle also possesses two other valves, viz., the *coronary valve,* which guards the entrance of the *coronary* vein (see fig. 43), and the *Eustachian valve,* which protects the termination of the inferior vena cava.

205. The *tricuspid valve* (from Lat. *tres*, three; and *cuspis*, a point), so called because it consists of three pointed membranes, when closed, separates the right auricle from the right ventricle. Its structure, general arrangement, and connection by the chordæ tendineœ, and its mode of action, are clearly shown in fig. 43.

206. The mitral, or *bicuspid valve*, so called from its fancied resemblance to a bishop's mitre, consists of *two pointed* membranes. Its general structure and mode of action resemble those of the tricuspid valve. When closed it separates the *left auricle* from the *left ventricle.*

207. The semi-lunar valves of the *aorta*, and of the *pulmonary* artery, and the *Eustachian* valve of the inferior vena cava, consist of three half-moon or crescentic shaped membranous folds or pockets, the *convex* borders of which are *attached* to the sides of the blood-vessels, their straighter edges turned towards the centres of the vessels being *free*, and pointing in the direction in which the current flows.

When the current is passing in its normal direction, the blood flows between the free edges of these membranous pouches, pushing them close up against the walls of the vessels, and thus making a clear passage for itself. When, on the contrary, the current attempts to *return*, the blood forces its way into the pouches behind the valves, and fills them out, pushing their free edges together, thus raising a partition or obstruction in the middle of the tube, which prevents all further movement of the blood in that direction. (See figs. 42, 43, 44, 45.)

In order the more effectually to close up the *central* spaces between the valves, the middles of the *free edges* of these valves are frequently furnished with little nodular bodies, termed the *corpora Arantii.*

208. The Pericardium (from Gr. *peri*, round; and *kardium*, the heart) is the conical, *fibro-serous* membranous *sac* which invests the heart and great blood-vessels. Its base is attached to the central *tendinous* portion of the *diaphragm;* its apex is directed upwards, and incloses the great blood-vessels about two inches above the base of the heart. The *pericardium* comprises *two* layers, one of which is adherent to the *outer* surface of the heart, forming its proper coat or tunic. This is termed the *visceral layer.* This layer is *reflected* from the vessels given off at the base of the heart, and descending, forms a *second* and thicker coat, termed the *parietal layer* of the pericardium, which completely encloses the heart, and against which it *glides* during its various movements. The two *epithelial* surfaces of the pericardium are moistened by a secretion or exudation, termed the *serous fluid,* which facilitates movement by lessening friction. The serous fluid is very similar to the *serum* of the blood. (See *Pleura.*)

209. **The Endocardium** is the thin *serous* membrane which lines the interior of the heart, and by reduplicature contributes to the formation of the *valves.*

210. **Sounds of the Heart.**—When the ear is placed against the front of the chest, over the region of the heart, *two* distinct *rhythmic* sounds are heard. They occur nearly in the following order:—

(1.) A dull, prolonged sound, somewhat resembling that produced by the syllable *lubb,* is heard.
(2.) A sharper and shorter sound, somewhat resembling that produced by the articulation of the syllable *dup,* is immediately heard.
(3.) A pause, about equal in duration to that occupied by the two sounds, is observed.
(4.) The first and second sounds are repeated as before.

The *cause* of the *first* sound is still matter of *doubt* and discussion among physiologists. It is, however, *probably* caused by the vibration of the auriculo-ventricular *valves,* of the ventricular *walls,* and of the *coats* of the aorta and of the pulmonary artery; also partly by muscular *bruit* (noise produced by the sudden and forcible contraction of the muscular substance of the heart), and by the vibration of the blood itself.

The *cause* of the *second* sound is the sudden *closure* of the semi-lunar valves of the *aorta* and *pulmonary artery* caused by the reflux of the blood consequent on the recoil (due to the elasticity of the arteries) on the termination of the *systole* or contraction of the ventricles.

That this is the true explanation of the *second* sound was first proved by *hooking up* segments of the semi-lunar valves during some experiments, in which the heart was kept in action by *artificial respiration.* When this was done the second sound *ceased,* though the heart still contracted. Other similar experiments, in which the semi-lunar valves where kept open by fine bent needles passing through the valves of the aorta and pulmonary artery, have been made with a like result.

211. **The Arterial Pulse** (from Lat. *pulso,* I beat) is the alternate *swelling* and *contraction,* and consequent *beating* of the arteries, which is felt when the finger is placed on the arteries of the temple wrist, ankle, or other part of the body.

The pulse is caused by the *systole* or contraction of the *ventricles* of the heart, which drives an additional quantity of blood into vessels already *quite full;* they consequently become distended and enlarged both in *diameter* and in *length.* The heart thus acts as a *force-pump.* On the cessation of the systole or propulsive contraction of the heart, the elasticity of the arterial walls causes them also to contract. The *expansive* force which they derived from the heart being thus given up during the intervals between the ventricular contractions, so as to render the movement of the blood continuous and uniform, and not *interrupted* and *intermittent,* as it would otherwise be if it depended alone on the contraction of the heart.

If the pulse be tested by an arrangement consisting of a series of *sphygmographs,* the *commencement* of the pulse is found to be simultaneous all through the system, but it attains its maximum earlier in those vessels which are *nearer* than in those which are more *remote* from the heart. Hence if the pulse be tested by the finger, which is not sufficiently delicate to detect its commencement, it is felt *sooner* in an artery *nearer* the heart, as at the wrist, than in one more *remote*, as at the ankle.

A *sphygmograph* (from Gr. *sphugmos*, pulsation, and *grapho*, I write) is an instrument consisting of a very delicate, long, light lever, and clock-work arrangement, by means of which the pulsations of an artery may be *traced* on a smoked glass, or other suitable surface.

212. The Vigour of the Pulse becomes *feebler* the more *remote* it is from the heart until the blood has passed through the capillaries into the veins, in which it entirely disappears. This gradual diminution of the force of the pulse depends—(*a*) On the *resistance* caused by *friction.* (*b*) On the *greater space* contained in the *small* as compared with the *larger* blood-vessels. The arterial system has been compared, from this point of view, to a *cone*, and a tree, the smaller capillaries being represented by the *base* (turned away from the heart) of the former, and the smaller and more remote branches of the latter.

The cessation of the pulse consequent on the blood's passing through a large number of small tubes, the combined *sectional area* of the interior of which exceeds that of the original vessel by which they are supplied, may be easily demonstrated practically by the following simple experiment:—Get a small *force pump*, or good sized injection syringe, a yard or so of elastic (india rubber) tubing, a piece of sponge, and a funnel. Fix the sponge securely, so as to close up the large end of the funnel; insert the small end of the funnel in one end, and the injecting syringe into the other end of the vulcanized tubing. Fill the tube with water, and then continue to inject fresh quantities of the liquid by means of the pump or syringe. The student will observe that every additional stroke of the pump, after the tube is filled with fluid, will give rise to a swelling and "kicking" of the tube (the latter due to its elongation), thus imitating the passage of the blood through the artery, with its accompanying phenomenon, the pulse. The water, however, will continue to flow evenly and uniformly, that is, without any *jerking* after passing through the pores of the sponge, thus also imitating the passage of the blood through the *capillaries* into the veins.

213. **The Nerves of the Heart** are derived from three sources :—

(1.) It possesses certain *intrinsic ganglia*—that is, *ganglia* lodged in its own substance. These, in all probability, give it its power of *rhythmic movement*.

(2.) From the *sympathetic* system, the influence by which the heart is excited to increased action by joy or other emotion, is in all probability conveyed to it by these nerves.

(3.) It receives branches of the *pneumogastric*, or *tenth* pair of nerves, which come directly from the brain. These latter exert an *inhibitory* influence on it, probably stopping its action, as in certain cases of death from *fright*.

The latter (inhibitory) influence may be well shown experimentally in the case of the heart of a frog. If its brain or spinal cord be destroyed, so as to *destroy* all sensibility, it will live, its *heart beating* and its blood circulating for an indefinite time afterwards. The *beating* of the heart may be readily shown to persons at a distance by causing the short end of a long, very light lever to rest on it, the chest of the frog having been opened to permit of this being done. The long end of the lever acts as an *index*, moving up and down with, and magnifying, as it were, the motion of the heart. If now, by skilful management, a series of electric shocks be sent through the *pneumogastric nerves*, the heart will, after each shock, for the time discontinue beating, its walls becoming relaxed and distended, but its action will be resumed on the removal of the irritation. It is hence inferred that, though the *pneumogastric nerves* may control or *inhibit* the movements of the heart, they cannot originate them.

214. **The Arteries** (from Gr. *aer*, air; and *tereo*, I keep) are the blood-vessels by which the blood is carried out from the heart, and distributed to the lungs and to the rest of the system. As the larger part of the blood contained in the arteries consists of pure, *oxidized*, scarlet blood. intended to nourish and vivify the general

tissues of the system it is generally termed *arterial blood.* The *pulmonary arteries,* on the contrary, con-

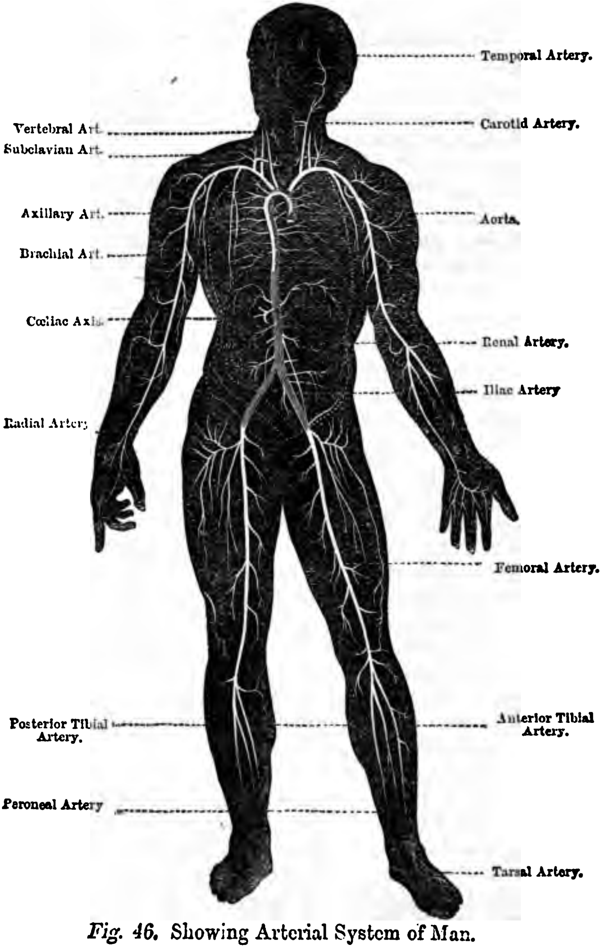


Fig. 46. Showing Arterial System of Man.

tain *venous* (dark-coloured) blood, which they convey *to* and distribute through the vessels of the lungs, for the purpose of purification.

The *arteries* commence in one large vessel, the *aorta* (see figs. 40, 42 and 46), which divides and subdivides into a large number of branches, which become, like those of a tree, more and more minute as they proceed farther from the trunk, until they ultimately *terminate* in the *capillaries.*

215. The *arteries* derived their name from the fact of their having been supposed by the ancients to contain air, being generally found empty after death.

The *emptiness* of the arteries after death is produced as follows :—

1. Immediately after *general* death the arteries, still retaining life, commence a course of *slow contraction,* due to their *tonicity,* by which their contents are driven into the *veins,* in which they *coagulate.*
2. In a few hours the arteries themselves die, and losing their *contractile* power, gradually relax to their former dimensions. But the blood having *coagulated* in the veins, is unable to *return,* and they are thus left comparatively empty.

216. The chief arteries are the *aorta,* or *systemic artery;* the *innominate* arteries, which send off the carotid arteries to the head, and the *subclavian,* which supply the *axillary,* the *brachial,* the *ulnar,* the *radial,* the *palmar,* and the *digital* arteries with blood; the *iliac* arteries (external and internal); the *femoral* arteries, which supply blood to the lower limbs; the *mesenteric* and *renal* arteries; and the *cœliac axis,* which gives off the *gastric, hepatic* and *splenic* arteries. (See fig. 46.)

The leading arteries are distributed through the body in the general direction of the chief bones in the *skeleton,* from their proximity to which they frequently derive their names, as in the cases of the *temporal, femoral, occipital, radial,* and *ulnar* and other arteries.

Their safety is secured by the protected situations they occupy, being in general *deeply* placed *near* and on the *flexor* sides of the bones, passing up the centres of the limbs, or in central positions in the great cavities of the trunk.

217. The Aorta (from Gr. *aeiro*, I suspend) is the *main trunk* of the arterial system. (See figs. 40 and 42.) It consists of a tough, flexible, cylindrical tube, rather less than one inch in diameter, which arises from the *upper* part of the *left ventricle*, and after proceeding *upwards* for about two inches, arches backward to the *left side;* and passing over the root of the left lung, descends through the *thorax*, on the left side of the vertebral column to the *diaphragm*, through the aortic opening of which it passes into the cavity of the *abdomen*, where, considerably reduced in size, it terminates opposite the *fourth lumbar* vertebra. At its termination it divides into two branches, which form the right and *left* common *iliac* arteries. The *aorta* is thus divisible into the *arch*, the *thoracic*, and the *abdominal* aorta.

The *arch* of the aorta gives off five branches:—the *right* and *left coronary* arteries (two small branches) from the ascending portion immediately above its root, and three large branches; the *innominate* artery, and the left *carotid* and left *subclavian* arteries. (See figs. 41, 42, and 43.)

The thoracic portion of the *aorta* gives off the *pericardic*, the *intercostal* arteries, the *bronchial* arteries (the nutrient vessels of the lungs), the *œsophageal* arteries, and the *mediastinal* arteries (those which supply the loose areolar tissue and the glands of the *mediastinum.*)

The *abdominal* portion of the *aorta* gives off the two *phrenic* arteries, the superior and inferior *mesenteric* arteries, the *cœliac axis*, the two *renal* arteries, the *lumbar*, the two *common iliac* arteries, and the middle *sacral* arteries.

218. The Cœliac Axis is a short *trunk* artery, about half an inch in length, which projects horizontally from the *aorta*, just opposite the *aortic opening* of the diaphragm. It divides into three branches, constituting respectively the *gastric*, *hepatic*, and *splenic* arteries (see fig. 46.), which supply the stomach, liver, and spleen with arterial blood.

219. Structure of the Arteries.—The walls of all but the smallest arteries consist of three coats, viz.—(1.) an *internal* or *epithelial* coat; (2.) a *middle* or *contractile* coat; (3.) an *external* or *areolar* coat.

220. The *internal coat* consists of two layers—an inner layer of *fusiform*, nucleated, *epithelial cells;* and an outer layer of transparent, colourless, shining membrane, consisting of *fenestrated elastic tissue.* (See figs. 22, 25.)

221. The *middle coat*, which is extremely *contractile* and *elastic*, consists of *involuntary* or *organic muscular fibre*, *yellow elastic fibre*, and *connective* tissue. This coat, which is very *thick* in the *larger* arteries, almost entirely disappears from the coats of the *smaller* arteries, in which it consists of a very thin layer of *fusiform muscular fibre* only (see fig. 32). It is in the greater thickness of this coat that the structure of the veins chiefly *differs* from that of the arteries.

222. It is to the great *contractile* power of this coat the fact is due, that a large artery may be torn through, as in certain accidents in which a limb is torn off the body by being caught in machinery in motion, that scarcely a drop of blood is spilt from the artery; whereas, had it been cut through with a sharp knife, the person, if left to himself, would speedily bleed to death.

Surgeons sometimes avail themselves of the *contractile* property of the arteries here indicated to remove dangerous tumours (in which the use of the knife would prove fatal) by laceration, produced by means of the application of long-continued but violent compression, by means of suitable instruments, so applied as to cause the closure of the arteries on the principle explained, as the tissues are gradually *torn* or *squeezed* through.

This peculiar result arises from the *recoil* and *contraction* of the stretched *elastic tissue*, which, on being *torn*, curls, retracts into, and closes the interior of the artery, thus effectually stopping the escape of the contained blood. No such effect is produced on the *veins*.

223. The *external* coat is in general the *thickest* of the arterial coats. It consists of *connective* and yellow *fibrous tissue;* it increases the toughness and strength of the arteries.

224. The *arteries* and the *veins* may readily be distinguished from each other in the dead body, as in the joints of meat which come from the butcher; the former (the arteries) being *round,* and having their *walls* comparatively stiff and thick; while the *walls* of the *veins* are *collapsed* and *flaccid.* In general, an artery cut, even when empty, preserves its cylindrical form; whereas the veins *collapse* under similar circumstances.

In the *smaller* arteries, just above the size of the capillaries, this *threefold structure* disappears; the walls of these arteries consisting of nearly homogeneous almost transparent membrane, containing *muscular fibre.*

225. The Vaso-motor Nerves, which are chiefly, if not entirely, derived from the *sympathetic system,* are the nerves which are distributed to the *smooth muscular fibres* in the walls of the arteries. By the *nervous influence* they supply, they determine the *tonicity* or degree of contraction of the walls, and consequent size of the *bore* of the vessels. In this way they also determine the supply of blood to, and the consequent *nutrition* of, an organ. (See *Nutrition*).

226. The Capillaries (from Lat. *capillus,* a hair) are the very minute blood-vessels which form the *terminations* of the smaller arteries, and the *commencement* of the smaller veins. It is impossible to draw the lines of demarcation, showing exactly where the arteries terminate, or the veins commence. (See fig. 47).

The *capillaries* in the body of a man are microscopic, cylindrical or sub-cylindrical tubes, having an average diameter of about $\frac{1}{3,000}$ of an inch; those in the brain being much smaller. They *differ* from the *veins* and *arteries,* not only in their greater *minuteness,* but also in the *structure of their walls,* which consist of an exceedingly fine homogeneous membrane containing *nuclei,* but destitute of *smooth muscular fibre.*

The *red corpuscles* are *too large* to admit of their passage into the smaller capillaries. The *capillaries* are the chief agents of *nutrition*, the *liquor sanguinis* or *blood-plasma* exuding or passing by *exosmosis* through their walls, and thus nourishing the adjacent tissues.

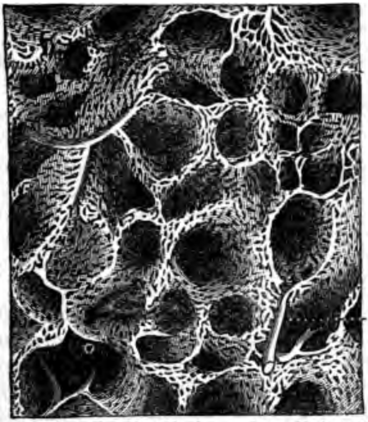


Fig. 47. Showing the Capillaries and small Arteries of the Air-Cells of the Lungs.

The *sectional area* of the capillaries has been estimated at about 400 times that of the arteries. It has also been estimated that the blood moves 400 to 500 times more slowly in the *capillaries* than in the larger *arteries*. In the capillaries it moves at the rate of about 1½ inches per minute.

227. The Veins are the blood-vessels which *return* the blood from the *capillaries* to the heart. They commence in a large number of very minute vessels, continuous with the capillaries, and, after uniting together as the small twigs of a tree unite to form larger ones, ultimately form into two large *trunk-veins*—the *superior* and *inferior venæ cavæ*—by which the blood is poured back into the heart.

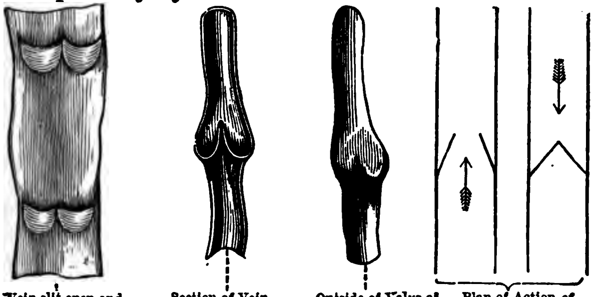
The *deep* veins in general accompany the arteries, usually running side by side with them; these are termed the *venæ comites* (companion veins), and bear the same names as their companion arteries.

The *superficial* veins in general lie between the skin and the outside of the muscles.

To stop a bleeding vein *pressure* should be applied to the vein on the *opposite* side of the *wound* to which the *heart* is situated.

228. The veins are more numerous, larger, and thinner walled than the arteries; they are consequently *flaccid* and collapsed, when empty, as we see them in joints from the butcher. When a *vein* is wounded, the blood issues from it in a *uniform continuous* stream, quite unlike the *jerking* flow from the *arteries*. The veins differ from the arteries also in being abundantly supplied with *valves*, which direct the blood towards the heart.

229. **The Valves of the Veins** consist in general of two or three *pocket-shaped pouches*, or *semi-lunar folds* of the membranes of the inner and middle coats of the vein. Immediately behind the point of connection of each valve the vein is a little expanded to allow of the blood's getting behind and closing the valve when any attempt at *regurgitation* is made.



Vein slit open and spread out. **Section of Vein, Valves closed by pressure behind.** **Outside of Valve of Distended Vein.** **Plan of Action of Valves.**

Fig. 48. Showing Semi-lunar Valves of Veins.

The *structure* and *action* of each valve are similar to those of the aortic, pulmonary and Eustachian valves described. (See Section 207.)

230. Venous Pulse.—When the air is expelled from the lungs during *expiration*, the *diaphragm* being pushed *up*, and the ribs being pushed *in* and *down*, the large *veins* in the chest become suddenly subjected to increased pressure, which from the *thinness* of their walls they are unable to withstand, therefore the blood they contain is driven back, or *regurgitates*, producing a swelling or pulsing *visible* in the veins of the neck, and known as the *venous pulse*. This is sometimes called the *respiratory venous* pulse, to distinguish it from the *venous pulse* caused by the regurgitation or backward flow of blood in the *superior vena cava*, due to the contraction or back action of the *right auricle* of the heart, especially where the walls or the valves of the vena cava are weak.

231. The Vasa Vasorum are the *blood-vessels* which pass into the substance of the *walls* of the arteries and veins to supply them with the blood necessary for their *nutrition*.

232. Blushing is a peculiar local modification of the circulation in the skin of the face, by which it becomes both *red* and *hot*. It is caused by *nervous shock* more or less slight, produced by mental emotion, which may be either pleasurable or painful, as follows:—The walls of the small arteries contain *smooth muscular fibre;* when they receive their proper supply of *nervous force* they contract, narrowing the calibre of the small arteries to their normal size. When, however, a person receives the slight nervous shock referred to, the *nervous force* is partially withheld from the *muscular fibres* of the small arteries, they therefore cease contracting, the calibre of the vessels is increased, and the warm blood rushes in, producing the *heat* and *redness* referred to.

233. The experimental proof that such is the true theory of the *cause* of *blushing* was first supplied by Professor Claude Bernard, who discovered that when the *sympathetic nerve* on *one side* of the neck of a rabbit is divided, the skin on that side becomes more abundantly supplied with blood, and consequently much hotter (7° to 11° Fahr.) This blushing is best shown in the ear of the rabbit; the delicate integument of which *reddens* from the dilatation and consequent rush of blood into its vessels.

This effect is produced by the *arrest* of the *nervous influence* which can no longer be sent through the branches of the cut nerve to the muscular fibre of the walls of the small blood-vessels, consequently losing their *contractile* power, they become *relaxed,* dilating from afflux of blood.

234. Dr. Chapman attributes cholera and sea-sickness to a similar agency. He supposes the cholera poison or influence, or the motion of the ship, to give rise to *nervous shock* or *disturbance,* and thus produce congestion of the sympathetic ganglia. The increased activity of the ganglia thus produced causes such an *increased* quantity of nervous force to be sent to the muscular fibre of the walls of the arteries of certain regions of the body, as to induce the arterial contraction, and consequent diminution of supply of blood referred to, and as a further consequence the abnormal effects of cholera and sea-sickness. He proposes, as a means of cure, to reduce the nervous congestion by applying *ice-bags* along the spine.

Doubtless *catarrh* (common cold), inflammation of the lungs, diarrhœa, &c., when brought about by *exposure to cold,* are produced mainly through the shock or disturbance it causes to the nervous system, which again acts through the medium of the *vaso-motor nerves* upon the small blood-vessels, producing first a sort of *paralysis* of their walls, then congestion, and ultimately, as a consequence of the latter, especially if long continued, *inflammation.*

235. Pallor, or sudden paleness and coldness of the face (or even of the whole skin), may also be produced by *nervous shock,* as of fright, terror, rage, or even excess of joy, or other emotion. In this case the shock gives rise to the opposite effect, causing increased contraction of the muscular fibre in the walls of the blood-vessels, by which the *calibre* of the vessels is reduced, and by which, consequently, the supply of blood to the skin or the face is also greatly diminished, thus causing *pallor*, with its accompanying coldness.

That this is the true theory of such pallor may also be proved experimentally, either by irritating or galvanizing the upper cut extremity of the *sympathetic nerve*, previously referred to, or the sympathetic nerve of the other side of the neck, in which case all the effects will be reversed, the muscular fibre of the walls *contracting more violently*, the bore of the small blood-vessels being reduced, the quantity of blood supplied being diminished, the temperature falling, and redness of the ear disappearing, or, in other words, *pallor* being produced.

236. Evidence of Circulation Obtainable in the Living Body.

(1.) When special poisons or soluble salts, as prussiate or nitrate of potash, are injected into the veins in one part of the system, they can readily be detected in blood drawn from *remote* veins in the course of a few seconds only.

(2.) Alcohol and other substances taken into the stomach can be detected in the blood and in the urine very shortly after its injection.

(3.) If a vein be wounded, pressure applied *between* it and the heart will not affect the bleeding; whereas pressure on the *remote* side of the wound will immediately arrest it.

(4.) On the contrary, if pressure be applied between a wound in an artery and the heart, it will *arrest* the bleeding; whereas if it be applied on the *opposite* (the *remote*) side of the wound, as in the case of the vein, the bleeding will *not* cease.

(5.) If pressure be applied to a vein *above* a valve, the progress of the blood is *arrested*, the vein *swells* up, and the exterior of the valve assumes a knotted appearance.

(6.) The movement of the corpuscles of the blood may be distinctly seen in the *transparent web* of a *frog's* foot, or the *tail* of a *tadpole*, when placed under the microscope.

The most satisfactory evidence of the circulation, however, is that furnished by the *structure* of the *heart* and *blood-vessels*, and more especially by the arrangement of the *valves* in the veins, which is such as only to make it possible for the blood to move in one way *out* and one way *back* to the heart. This, however, can only be learnt, as Harvey, the great discoverer of the circulation learnt it—viz., by the study of the dead body.

CHAPTER VIII.

RESPIRATION.—THE LUNGS.

237. The Part Played by Oxygen in the Animal Economy.—The *vital power* by which the human body performs its various functions—physical, muscular, and mental—is derived from the *chemical force* eliminated during the combination of the *oxygen* of the air with the *carbon* and *hydrogen* of the *tissues;* just as in the case of the *steam engine,* the whole of the *work done* is executed by the *heat* developed during the *chemical* union of the *oxygen* of the atmosphere with the *carbon* and *hydrogen* of the coal, or other fuel employed. The *presence of oxygen* at every point of the body, where *work* is to be done, becomes thus an indispensable necessity. This *vivifying* of the tissues, or supplying them with *oxygen,* and getting rid of the dead *products of their oxidation,* or combustion, is the chief function of *respiration* or *breathing.*

238. Respiration may be defined as the process by which oxygen is *absorbed* by the blood through the medium of the *lungs* and *skin;* while *carbonic acid, water,* and *urea,* are simultaneously *excreted.*

239. Changes in the Blood during Respiration.—When the dark purple *venous* blood, loaded with carbonic acid and other waste products, is brought by the pulmonary capillaries *to,* and distributed over the *surface* of the air-cells, the latter being simultaneously filled with air, the oxygen of the air being first *dissolved* in the liquid moistening the surface of the air-cells, passing by *endosmose* through their walls, and also through those of the capillaries, is immediately *absorbed* by the red corpuscles of the blood, changing the blood to a *bright scarlet* colour. *Simultaneously* with the absorption of the oxygen, an equal volume of *carbonic acid gas* is *discharged* by *exosmose* into the air-cells, to be expelled from the lungs by the process of *expiration.*

The *dark venous* unrespired blood thus differs from the bright *scarlet arterial* blood, the product of respiration, in containing not only *less* carbonic acid, urea, and water, but much *more* oxygen.

240. Proofs of Waste through the Lungs.—

(1.) Breathe through a glass vessel containing clear *lime water*. The water immediately becomes *white* and *turbid*, from the formation of *chalk* or white carbonate of lime, thus proving carbonic acid gas to be evolved from the lungs.

(2. Breathe on to a *cold* bright looking-glass or bright steel knife blade, it immediately becomes *dim* from the deposit of *dew*, thus proving the evolution of *water* from the lungs.

(3.) Breathe through a small quantity of strong *sulphuric acid* in a glass vessel, after a time it blackens or turns brown, thus showing the presence of *organic* matter in the breath.

This last experiment can only be performed without great or even *fatal* danger by the practised chemist.

241. The Scheme of Structure of the Lungs consists of (1.) A means of collecting and presenting, in the smallest possible space, a very extensive *surface of blood*, to a very large *surface of air;* of (2.) A means of collecting and presenting, in an equally small compass, a large surface of *air* to the *blood*.

The *first* object is effected by causing the blood to pass into a very extensive net-work of *minute capillaries*, the area of which is many times greater than that of the entire body. This large surface of *vascular* net-work, which has been estimated at upwards of 1,400 square feet, is folded and packed up within the chest, and thus forms the chief bulk of the lungs.

The *second* object is effected by an immense number of cavities (*air sacs* with pouched sides), or air cells, their walls consisting chiefly of *mucous* membrane. These air sacs are closely *lined* on their exterior by the *capillary net-work* just described. (See fig. 47.)

In addition to the above, the lungs necessarily contain a large number of *blood-vessels* and *air tubes*, to take the blood and air *to* and *from* the lungs. They are also supplied with *nerves* and *lymphatics.*

A very good idea of the plan of structure of the lungs may be formed by imagining a large sheet of fine silk, containing about 1,400 square feet, to be packed up in the chest, so as to leave myriads of minute *air cavities* communicating with the external atmosphere. But in this case each *minute* fibre of silk, of which the woven tissue is composed, must be supposed to be not a *solid fibre,* but a *hollow tube,* through which blood is circulating. In any case the student should, if possible, endeavour to see a portion of *lung tissue,* especially its *capillary structure,* under a good microscope. Without such an opportunity, he can form no adequate idea of the exquisite beauty of the minute lung structures.

242. The Lungs are the principal organs of respiration. They consist of two large, light, conical, pinkish, mottled, spongy, *elastic* organs, which surround the heart, and occupy the right and left sides of the cavity of the *thorax* or chest. They weigh about *twenty-four* ounces. The *right* lung is larger, and consists of three *lobes* or divisions, separated by clefts; the *left* contains but two *lobes.* These lobes again are divisible into *lobules,* each *lobule* constituting, in fact, a *miniature lung.* (See fig. 41.)

Each lung consists essentially of an aggregation of air tubes, air sacs with cells, arteries, veins, and capillaries, with nerves and lymphatics.

When an infant has once *lived*—that is, has once had its lungs inflated with air—they become lighter than, and will therefore float in, *water.* Hence, if a dead infant has been born alive, and a piece of its lung be cut off, it will *float* in water; if born dead, it will *sink.* As the *lungs* are the only viscera which will *float* in water, they are popularly termed, and are known by the butcher as "the *lights.*"

Experiment.—Blow down the *trachea* into the "lights" (lungs) of a sheep; if not injured they will immediately become *distended.* Allow the air to escape and their *elasticity* will cause them to contract and *expel* the air.

243. The pressure of the air *in* the lungs in both the *live* and the *dead* subject presses them out, so that they fill the entire cavity of the chest, excepting that occupied by the other organs. If, however, an aperture *larger* than that of the *glottis* were cut through the *outer* wall of the chest and outer layer, of the *pleura,* the external air would rush in through the aperture and compress the lungs so as to cause them to *collapse.*

244. **Course of the Air in Breathing.**—When the mouth is *closed,* the air on its way *to* the lungs passes through the two *anterior nares* (or nostrils) into the *nasal* cavities; from the nose through the two posterior nares into the *pharynx;* thence through the *larynx, trachea,* two *bronchi, bronchial tubes;* and ultimately, by slow mixture or *diffusion,* into the *air cells.* During its *return,* it of course takes the *opposite* direction. When the *mouth* is also open during breathing, a portion of the air passes through it and the *fauces* into the *pharynx,* where it joins the rest of the *tidal air* on its way to the lungs.

245. **The Air Tubes of the Lungs** consist of an *arborescent* system of tubes, comprising the *trachea,* right and left *bronchi,* primary, secondary, tertiary, and *ultimate* bronchial tubes, by which the air is distributed to all parts of the lungs. (See fig. 49.)

246. **The Trachea** (from Gr. *trachus,* rough), or windpipe, is the principal air tube of the lungs. It consists of a *membranous* tube, supported and kept open by sixteen to twenty *imperfect rings* (about two-thirds of the circle) of *cartilage* (gristle). It is about four and a-half inches long, and three-quarters of an inch in diameter. It *commences* at the bottom of the *larynx,* or voice box, and extends down to the lungs, opposite to the *third* dorsal vertebra, where it *bifurcates* or divides into two branches, termed respectively the right and the left *bronchus.* Its *interior* surface is lined with *ciliated mucous* membrane. (See fig. 49) The fronts of the cartilaginous rings are turned outwards, and may be felt by rubbing the front of the throat with the finger, giving

it the rough or uneven surface from which it derives its name. The hinder, third, or defective parts of these rings are turned towards the *back* of the trachea, and thus being situated immediately in *front* of the *œsophagus*, or food-pipe, facilitate swallowing.

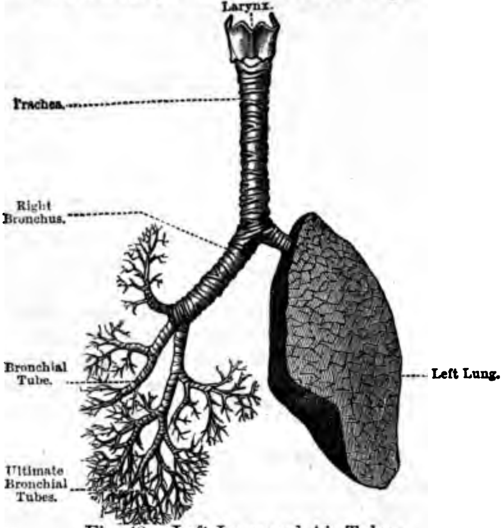


Fig. 49.—Left Lung and Air Tubes.

The chief *function* of these *cartilaginous* rings is to keep the walls of the trachea from *collapsing,* in which case *suffocation* would ensue.

The *membranous* portion of the trachea consists of areolar or *connective* tissue, and *muscular* fibre.

247. The Bronchi are the air tubes which enter the right and left lung. They are formed by the *bifurcation* of the *trachea,* and have the same general structure as that of the *trachea,* with the exception of their cartilaginous rings, which are *entire* rings, and not broken, as in the case of those of the trachea. (See fig. 49.)

248. The Bronchial Tubes are the smaller air tubes, formed by the *dichotomous* divisions and subdivisions of the two *bronchi,* which divide and subdivide like the branches of a tree. (See fig. 49.)

249. The Ultimate Bronchial Tubes are the smallest of the bronchial tubes; they terminate in the *infundibula,* and are formed by the last or *ultimate* division of these tubes. Their walls are exceedingly thin; they are lined with *tessellated* or *squamous* epithelium. They contain no *cartilaginous* structures.

Inflammation of the bronchial tubes is termed *bronchitis.*

250. The Infundibula, or **Lung Sacs,** are minute funnel-shaped or conical expansions of the *terminal* or *ultimate* bronchial tubes; they are about *one-fortieth* of an inch in diameter. Their walls are, as it were, punched out into very minute pouches, indentations, or *saccules,* termed air cells. (See Fig. 50.) These walls consist of exceedingly delicate, *fibrous* and *mucous* membrane, covered on the inside with *tessellated epithelium,* and lined on the outside by an exceedingly close *capillary* net-work, the diameter of the blood-vessels of which does not exceed the $\frac{1}{3,000}$ of an inch. (See fig. 47.) The passages

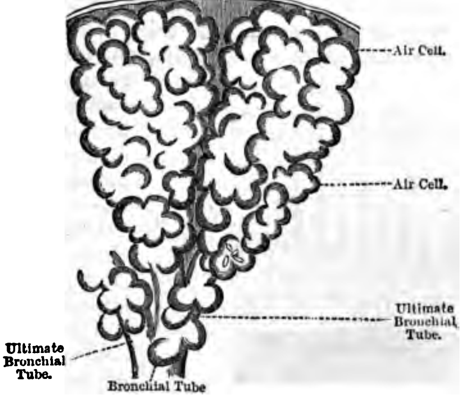


Fig. 50. Showing Two Infundibula or Air-Sacs at the termination of Bronchial Tubes.

or spaces in the lung sac between the air cells, and into which they open, are called *intercellular* passages.

251. The Air Cells, or Alveoli are the minute pouches or *saccules* on the walls of the *infundibula* just described. They are about $\frac{1}{200}$ of an inch in diameter, and it is said that there are as many as 1,700 in each *infundibulum*, and that the lungs contain 600,000,000 of these *air cells*. (See fig. 50.)

There is no communication between the walls of one air cell and another. But the capillary blood-vessels which line them (on the *outside*) are very generally placed between the walls of the adjacent air cells, so as to project into the interior of each, so that the blood they contain is thus bathed by air on both sides of the blood-vessel.

252. Cilia and Ciliated Epithelium (from Lat. *cilium*, an eyelash). The *epithelial* cells which line the interior of all but the most minute air tubes of the lungs, consist of minute conical, nucleated cells, which are attached by their apices to the surface of the mucous membrane, their bases or greatest diameters being turned towards the interior of the tubes. The *bases* of these cells are covered with exceedingly minute *microscopic vibratile* thread-like processes, about $\frac{1}{3,000}$ of an inch long, termed *cilia*, the structure of which has not yet been determined.

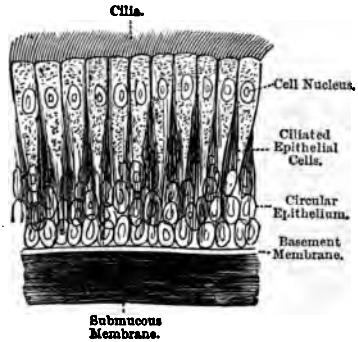


Fig. 51. Showing Ciliated Mucous Membrane lining Trachea and Air Tubes.

These minute processes or cilia, when seen under the microscope during life, as in the ciliated mucous membrane of the *pharynx* of a frog, are observed to keep up a continual *vibratile* or wave-like movement, much resembling that of a miniature corn-field, the wave movement always being propagated in the same direction. Their chief function in the human being appears to be to drive the dirt and *mucus*, which tend to collect in the air tubes, outwards. They line the *nasal* and other *air cavities* connected with them, as well as the air tubes previously described. *Cilia* are also found in the ventricles of the brain.

In some of the lower forms of animal life they constitute the chief means of *locomotion*, also the means by which they obtain their food.

253. The Chief Blood-vessels of the Lungs are the two pulmonary *arteries* which take the *venous* blood from the *right ventricle*, and distribute it to the capillaries of the lungs, and the four pulmonary veins which return the blood from the lungs to the *left auricle*. (See figs. 3 and 41.)

254. Composition of Atmospheric Air.—Every 100 parts of ordinary unrespired air contains nearly 21 parts of *oxygen* gas, and nearly 79 parts of *nitrogen gas*, together with a minute portion of *aqueous vapour*, and a still more minute portion, about $\frac{1}{3,000}$, of *carbonic acid* gas.

The following Table shows more approximately the composition of *ordinary* and *respired* air, supposing (which is not the case) that the quantity of *aqueous vapour* remains unchanged.

ATMOSPHERIC AIR—PURE.		RESPIRED.
Oxygen, ...	20·61	16·26
Nitrogen, ...	77·95	77·95
Carbonic Acid, . .	0·04	4·39
Aqueous Vapour, . .	1·40	1·40
	100·00	100·00

255. Changes in Respired Air.—Respired air, as it leaves the lungs, differs from ordinary air—

(1) In containing about four and a half to five per cent. *less* oxygen.

(2) In containing about four and a half to five per cent. more carbonic acid.

(3) In being *saturated* with aqueous vapour.

(4) In containing *urea* and other highly decomposable animal matter.

(5) In its comparatively high temperature, usually about 98° Fahrenheit.

The quantity of nitrogen expired varies but slightly.

The quantity of the various substances given off during respiration varies, however, with age, sex, health, amount of bodily labour, period of the year, temperature, &c.

Dr. Smith found an increase in the quantity of carbonic acid given off per minute, to the extent of two cubic inches for each 1lb. weight carried by a soldier in marching order.

The quantity of aqueous vapour expired varies very greatly, but may be taken on the average as equal to nine or ten ounces (half to three-quarters of a pint) per day.

The average quantity of solid carbon breathed out daily in the form of carbonic acid gas would be equal to a *lump of pure charcoal* weighing *seven* to *eight* ounces.

256. Ventilation (from Lat. *ventus*, the wind) is the process by which bad, vitiated, or *respired* air is systematically and continuously removed from a room or chamber, and its place supplied with pure, unrespired air. No room is fit for human habitation which is not properly ventilated. No human being should sleep in a room, or live, or work in a workshop, which is less than *nine* feet square, or which allows less cubical space per head than 700 to 800 cubic feet—viz., the cubical contents of such a room; and the whole of the air in such a room should be changed by a proper system of ventilation at least twice each hour. The cubical space here mentioned is that professedly allowed in all well-appointed hospitals.

That an amount of pure air, equal to that just given, is required for healthy subsistence, is sufficiently proved by the following facts:—An average adult passes through his lungs per day nearly 400 cubic feet of air, which he robs of nearly five per cent., or nearly 20 cubic feet, of pure *life-giving* oxygen, and *poisons*, by discharging into it about the same bulk of carbonic acid gas and decomposable dead organic matter. Suppose such a man to be hermetically closed up in such a room, in the course of twenty-four hours there would remain in that room no portion of the gas which had not passed into and out of his lungs, or which had not contributed its five per cent. of its oxygen towards the sustenance of his *vitality*, or which was not laden with five per cent. of his *burnt tissues.*

257. Source of the Carbonic Acid.—If the larger part of oxygen respired combined with the tissues or the constituents of the blood before it left the lungs, the evolution of *heat* in the lungs would become so great as to destroy life. The lungs, on the contrary, are little it any hotter than other organs in the interior of the body; consequently the lungs cannot, as was formerly supposed, be the sole, or even the chief seat of the combustion of the tissues.

Animal heat is developed, and consequently slow *combustion* must proceed *all through* even the most remote parts of the body. Every living molecule in the body is probably in its turn a seat of combustion and a *source* of carbonic acid. The red corpuscles of the blood, the *oxygen carriers,* probably absorb and dissolve oxygen in the lungs, and carry it out in solution even to the most remote tissues, delivering it up to hungry molecules surrounding or adjacent to the capillaries on their outward life-giving journey, and receiving and returning laden with the product of the burnt molecules, chiefly in the form of carbonic acid gas in a state of solution. The *animal heat*, the result of this combustion, would thus be developed at all points in the system, and not in the lungs only, as would be the case if they were the chief seats of the combustion of the tissues.

Professor Huxley compares the blood circulating through its vessels, and receiving heat from burning tissues at all surrounding points, to a system of pipes surrounded by little gas flames, through which water is continuously circulating.

The oxygen passes *from* the *capillary* blood-vessels *to* the tissues by *exosmose;* the carbonic acid passes from the region of tissue combustion through the walls of the capillaries *to* their interior by *endosmose.*

When the *venous* or impure carbonic acid laden air reaches the lungs, and comes into contact with the oxygen of the air, the carbonic acid passes by *exosmose* into the *air sacs,* while oxygen passes from the air sacs into the blood in the *pulmonary capillaries* by *endosmose.* The walls of the lungs then contract by *reflex action,* expelling a portion of the contained air, thus constituting *expiration.*

258. Mechanical Movements of Respiration. — The process of *respiration* is effected by means of the alternate *enlargement* and *diminution* of the cavity of the chest or *thorax,* the movements in this process very nearly resembling the action of an ordinary *bellows* in blowing a fire.

When the cavity of the chest is *enlarged,* air rushes in, impelled by its own *pressure* or *elasticity:* this constitutes *inspiration.* When the cavity of the chest is *diminished* by the pressure and weight of its own walls, a portion of the enclosed air is forced out: this constitutes *expiration.*

The chief causes of these movements are :—1*st,* The *mobility* of the walls of the chest, the chief agents of which are the respiratory muscles; 2*nd,* The *elasticity* of the lungs.

259. The Thorax or chest is a closed, air-tight, conical, or *bee-hive* shaped cavity, containing but one opening. It is situated in the upper half of the *trunk*, its base being turned downwards so as to rest on the top of the *abdomen*.

The *interior* cavity of the thorax is occupied by the *heart*, *lungs*, and great blood-vessels. (See fig. 3.) The heart, the lungs, and the walls of the chest are lined by *serous* membranes, termed respectively the *pericardium* and the *pleuræ*.

The *walls* of the thorax are built up of the twelve pairs of *ribs* or costæ, the *costal cartilages*, the *sternum*, the twelve *dorsal vertebræ*, and the *intercostal* muscles. The *thorax* is closed in below by a floor of *tendon* and *muscle*, termed the *diaphragm*.

The *bony* and *cartilaginous structures* of the chest form a sort of *cage*, the openings or interstices of which are filled up by muscles.

The cavity in the centre of the chest, between the two lungs, which contains the heart, its blood-vessels, and a part of the œsophagus, is termed the *mediastinum*.

260. The Pleura is the *serous* membrane which lines the interior of the walls of the *thorax*, and is reflected on to the upper part of each lung from its root downward, so as to form a complete covering or investment for them. (See fig. 3.)

During the movements of respiration, the two surfaces of the *pleura*—viz., that which lines the wall of the chest, and that which lines the outside of each lung—rub against each other. The two surfaces of the *pleura* which rub against each other are moistened or lubricated by *serous* fluid, which prevents friction.

Inflammation of the pleura is termed *pleurisy*, or *pleuritis*.

Those portions of the *pleura* which line the two lungs are termed the *visceral* layers of the pleura; that which lines the walls of the chest is termed the *parietal* layer of the pleura. The whole forms a closed sac or shut cavity.

The arrangement of the lungs and the *two pleuræ* may be illustrated as follows:—Procure a large *sponge*, which will represent the *lungs;* place the *sponge* in a thin *paper bag* which just fits it; this will represent the *visceral layer* of the *pleura.* Place the *sponge* and *paper bag* inside a *second,* and therefore outer paper bag, which will represent the *parietal layer* of the *pleura.* Join the mouths of the two bags. The two surfaces of the bags which are now in contact will represent the two moistened surfaces of the pleuræ, which *rub* together in breathing.

261. **The Diaphragm or Midriff** is the large thin *musculo-tendinous,* somewhat fan-shaped septum, partition, or dividing membrane, which separates the cavities of the thorax and the abdomen, and forms the *floor* of the thoracic, and the *roof* of the abdominal cavity.

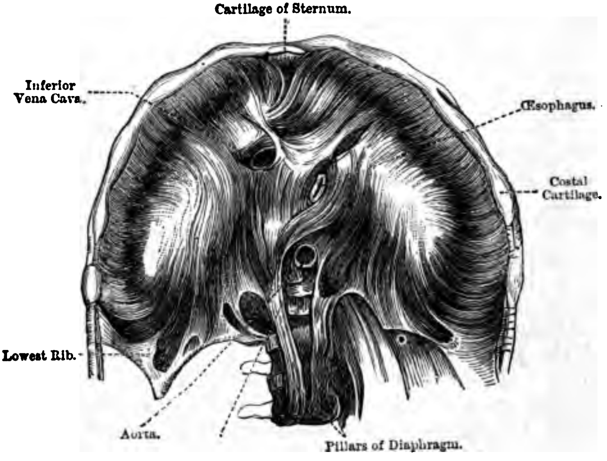


Fig. 52. Showing Diaphragm seen from the lower or Abdominal Side.

Its central tendinous or whitish portion, which is termed its *aponeurosis,* consists of white fibrous tissue, and somewhat resembles in shape that of a clover leaf.

It is attached in front to the cartilage of the sternum, on the sides, and posteriorly to the ribs; also, to the *lumbar* portion of the vertebral column behind, by means of two masses of muscle, termed the *pillars of the diaphragm.*

It contains three large important **and** several small openings, all of which are air-tight. The three larger openings are—one for the *œsophagus,* one for the *aorta,* and another for the *vena cava inferior.* The *thoracic duct* also passes through the diaphragm.

When in a state of rest, it arches up considerably into the region of the thorax. When its muscular portion contracts, it becomes much smaller superficially, and consequently flattens down upon the contents of the abdomen, driving out and forwards the abdominal walls, and materially increasing the *size* of the cavity of the *thorax.*

The principal nerves of the *diaphragm* are the *phrenic* nerves.

262. Ordinary Inspiration.—During inspiration the cavity of the chest is enlarging—*vertically,* by the contraction and consequent descent of the diaphragm; *laterally* and *antero-posteriorly,* by the *twisting* and elevation and consequent *lifting* or pushing *outwards* of the ribs and sternum, and consequently of the walls of the chest.

As the cavity of the chest is thus enlarging, a tendency to the formation of a *vacuum* is produced. This is, however, simultaneously counteracted by the pressure of the external atmosphere, which, pressing with a force of fifteen pounds on the square inch, immediately rushes down the *air-tract* (that is, through the *mouth,* or *nose,* or both) into the *pharynx,* thence successively through the *glottis* into the *larynx,* the *trachea,* the *bronchi,* the *bronchial tubes,* ultimately reaching the air sacs and cells of the lungs by "*diffusion.*"

The various movements here indicated are produced as follows:—

(1) The *levatores costarum* (muscles which elevate the upper ribs) contract, slightly raise, and *fix* the upper ribs, which thus become a base of operations for the lower ribs. (See Appendix fig. 92.)

(2) The *external intercostal* muscles, which fill up the spaces between the ribs; also, a portion of the internal intercostals and of the trianguli sterni now contract, drawing *up* and *outwards* the remaining ribs.

(3) The *diaphragm* (a large flat muscle, fixed by its outer rim of periphery) now contracts from its tendinous centre, thus causing it to descend.

The various movements here described really take place simultaneously. There are also other muscles than those now mentioned, which take part in these changes, which have been omitted for the sake of greater simplicity.

During very gentle respiration this work is effected almost entirely by the movements of the *diaphragm.*

263. Extraordinary Inspiration.—During very violent or *forced* inspiration, the capacity of the chest is greatly enlarged by the additional action of the following muscles; viz., the serratus, lattissimus dorsi, pectoral, and sterno-mastoid muscles; in fact, of all the muscles of the back and neck which can assist in raising the ribs.

264. Ordinary Expiration is chiefly effected by the *elastic* recoil of the ribs, cartilages, and the lung tissues, and by the action of *gravity*, which causes the ribs and other organs to fall into their original positions so soon as they are released from the action of the *inspiratory* muscles. Expiration is, in fact, mainly due to the return of the lungs, ribs, and diaphragm, to the condition they were in *before* inspiration. The *internal intercostals*, muscles which pull the ribs downwards, also probably aid in even *ordinary* expiration.

265. Extraordinary Expiration is effected by the additional aid of the internal intercostal muscles, the abdominal muscles, the muscles of the back, the loins, the pelvis, and, in fact, in excessive cases, of most of the muscles in the body.

266. Costal or Pectoral Respiration.—When the process of respiration is effected chiefly by the movements of the ribs, or the *upper* part of the chest, as in the case of women, or of persons labouring under inflammation in any part of the abdomen, it is termed *costal* respiration.

267. Diaphragmatic or Abdominal Respiration.—When respiration is mainly effected by the movements of the diaphragm, with its corollary, the continued backward and forward movement of the contents of the abdomen, it is termed *diaphragmatic.*

The difference between these two modes of respiration are well illustrated by the difference in the movements of the chests of male and female singers, so obvious in large concert-rooms, especially after or during the *fortissimo* passages. *Costal* and *diaphragmatic* respiration are, however, nearly always conjoined.

268. Snoring is the noise produced by *inspiration* through the mouth during sleep. It is caused by the current of air impinging against, and being broken by, the *uvula.*

269. Sighing is a deep, prolonged, slightly sonorous *inspiration,* in which a larger than usual quantity of air enters the lungs, to compensate for a series of previous imperfect respirations.

These imperfect respirations, or aërations, are in general due to the lungs being deprived of their usual supply of *nervous force,* in consequence of sustained *attention* or mental *emotion.*

270. Sniffing is an inspiratory act, which differs from *sighing* chiefly in being more rapid, and in the air being made to pass through the nose by the closure of the mouth.

271. Yawning is very deep *sighing,* accompanied by depressive movements of the lower jaw, and elevation of the ribs and shoulder blades. It is due to an exaggeration of the same causes as those which give rise to sighing.

272. Coughing is a sudden violent forcible *expiration,* whose object is the expulsion of some irritating or offending matter from the walls of the air-passages. It is a purely *reflex* action. It is immediately preceded by a deep *inspiration,* the glottis is then first closed, and immediately afterwards violently burst open by the compression of the air by the contraction of the *abdominal* and other *expiratory* muscles, the ejected stream of air being expelled through the *mouth* with sufficient force to carry with it the *mucus*, or other offending matter by which the action was first excited.

Even comparatively slight attacks of *bronchitis* are fatal to infants, who have not the power, experience, or judgment to expel the collecting mucus, &c., which ultimately kills by suffocation.

273. **Sneezing** only differs from coughing in the fact that by the closure of the *fauces* the blast of expired air is driven through the *nose.*

274. **Sobbing** consists of a series of short spasmodic *inspiratory* contractions of the *diaphragm*, usually accompanied by simultaneous contractions or *closures* of the *glottis*, by which air is prevented from entering the *lungs.*

275. **Hiccough** consists of a series of short convulsive, inspiratory contractions of the *diaphragm*, similar to those of sobbing—the *glottis* in this case, however, closing *spasmodically* as the air enters, thus continually stopping it in its course, and giving rise to the sounds peculiar to *hiccough.*

276. **Crying and Laughing** are, physiologically speaking, acts of a precisely similar character. They consist of a series of short, convulsive, *expiratory* movements of the *diaphragm* and muscles of the chest, the *glottis* being open, and the breath being forced out in a series of jerks, until the *diaphragm* becomes more arched upwards, and the chest more completely emptied of air than it can be by any ordinary expiration.

277. **Frequency of Respiration.**—An ordinary adult at rest breathes on the average *eighteen* times per minute; during disease the number of respirations may amount to 100 per minute. The number of respirations per minute increases very greatly with exertion, as during running. It also increases with the *rarity* of the atmosphere, being greater up high mountains than on the plains below.

278. **Residual Air.**—After the fullest and most com-

plete *expiration* possible, from 75 to 100 cubic inches remain in the lungs, and *cannot* be got rid of. This has been termed the *residual air*.

279. Tidal or Breathing Air.—During ordinary breathing an average adult *inspires* and *expires* from 20 to 30 cubic inches, or a little more than a pint to a pint and a-half each respiration. This has been termed *tidal* or *breathing air*.

280. Complemental Air.—The quantity of air which can be drawn into the lungs by a *forced inspiration*, over and above that which is drawn into the lungs during an ordinary *inspiration*, has been termed *complemental air*.

281. Supplemental Air.—The quantity of air over that of the *residual air*, which remains in the lungs after an *ordinary expiration*—viz., 75 to 100 cubic inches—has been termed the *supplemental air*.

282. Capacity of the Lungs.—The lungs of an ordinary person are thus capable, when fully inflated by forced inspiration, of containing, say 100 cubic inches *residual air*, 30 cubic inches *tidal* air, 100 cubic inches *complemental* air, and 100 cubic inches *supplemental* air, thus giving a total of 330 cubic inches as the capacity of the lungs.

The greatest respiratory capacity of the lungs, as indicated by the greatest quantity of air which a person can expel from his chest by one continued, forcible *expiration* (as measured by the *spirometer*) has been termed the *vital capacity* of that person. It varies with stature, weight, age, &c., and increases about 8 cubic inches for every inch of stature.

The average vital capacity of a healthy man, 5 feet 7 inches in height, is 225 cubic inches. The *vital capacity* does not depend so much upon the *size* of the chest as upon the *mobility* of its walls, which is greatly increased by proper *gymnastic* training.

The *tightness* of the dress, even as ordinarily worn, seriously lessens the breathing capacity. A man who, when undressed, could take in 190 cubic inches of air by a *forced* inspiration, could, when dressed in his ordinary clothes, only inspire 130 cubic inches.

Sedentary occupations, working or standing in cramped positions, sleeping in rooms without fire-places or with the fire-places stopped, sleeping with the head under the bed-clothes, seriously impede respiration, and consequently lower the tone of health, and lessen the growth of young people.

283. **Artificial Respiration.**—When life has been suspended by partial suffocation, as by drowning or hanging, it may frequently be restored by a system of *artificial respiration*, by means of which pure air is systematically passed *into* and *out of* the lungs, by the adoption of a judicious series of mechanical movements, by which the natural movements of *inspiration* and *expiration* are imitated.

In all cases of attempted restoration after drowning or suffocation, the back of the throat or mouth should be first cleared of any *dirt* or *mucus* which may have collected there, and the tongue be drawn forward or outwards, so as to prevent its root falling backwards, and stopping the entrance of the *larynx*.

284. **Asphyxia** or **Suffocation** is the term applied to that condition of "*oxygen starvation*" which is induced by the prolonged suspension of the process of respiration. If sufficiently prolonged, it terminates in death. When death is caused by *suffocation*, it arises from the *cessation* of the action of the heart and the consequent *arrest of the circulation*. This result is brought about very nearly as follows:—

1. The very slightly aërated blood is very greatly *retarded* during its return passage through the *capillaries* of the lungs, consequently the pulmonary arteries become gorged with *venous* blood.
2. The passage of the blood through the *right* ventricle of the heart being thus obstructed, the *right* side of the heart becomes consequently distended and engorged with impure or *venous* blood.
3. The arteries and the *left* side of the heart then for a *short* time become distended with blood, and *beat* violently.
4. The arteries, now slowly contracting (possibly from the

stimulus of the impure blood they receive), nearly empty themselves of their contents, driving the blood into the *venous* system.

5. The brain and nervous system, being now supplied only with *non-aërated*, that is *venous* blood, (the whole of the available oxygen at first contained in the lungs being by this time used up) become *paralyzed*, and cease to send the necessary *nervous force* to the heart: the heart therefore ceases to *beat*.

When a man dies by choking or strangulation, the face blackens or becomes of a deep purple hue, the veins of the face and the neck become greatly swollen, and the man becomes convulsed and insensible. Bleeding is sometimes useful in restoring the circulation.

When the body is examined after *death by suffocation*, the *right* side of the *heart*, and *veins* in general, are, usually found greatly *distended* and *engorged* with *venous* blood, while the *left* side of the heart and the *arteries* are found comparatively *empty*.

Many imperfectly authenticated cases are reported of animation having been restored after respiration had been suspended for a period of half an hour; one properly authenticated case, however, is known in which animation was restored after respiration had been suspended during a period of a quarter of an hour.

285. *Asphyxia* produces death in *inflammation* of the lungs and in *bronchitis* by suffocation, produced through the obstruction of the air passages and air cavities by phlegm, mucus, coagulable lymph, and pus, formed and collected during the progress of the disease.

286. **Respiratory Sounds or Murmurs.**—When the ear is applied to the chest, or to a suitably formed piece of wood (as a stethoscope) placed in contact with the chest, certain *sounds*, produced by the passage of the air through the *bronchial* tubes, can be distinctly heard. As these sounds differ very greatly when the lungs are invaded by *disease*—as when they become filled with fluid, or when a portion of the lungs becomes filled with solid *tuberculous* matter, or ulcerated into large *cavities* —they are of the greatest possible use to the physician in judging of the condition of his patient.

CHAPTER IX.

ANIMAL HEAT.

287. Animal Heat is, as has been shown, a consequence of *respiration.* It is *generated* wherever the blood or tissues of the organism are *oxidated* or converted into carbonic acid, water, urea, or uric acid. Every capillary vessel, every point in the tissues external to the capillaries in which this act of combustion takes place, becomes practically a "small fire-place, in which heat is being evolved in proportion to the activity of the *chemical* changes which are going on."

288. *Exercise* promotes the increase of the *animal heat* by increasing the *chemical action* of the body. The atmosphere of high mountains tends to lessen the temperature of the body, because of its *rarity* and the consequent insufficiency of the *oxygen.*

It has been estimated that the amount of heat generated in the human body in the course of twenty-four hours is sufficient to boil six gallons (about 60 lbs) of ice-cold water.

289. The *Animal heat* is *regulated* by the skin and by the organs of circulation. The former keeps down the temperature through the agency of the *perspiration,* by which *evaporation* is promoted in a ratio proportionate to the surplus heat generated—the latter by distributing it uniformly through the body.

Nothing tends to keep down the accumulation of heat more than *evaporation,* by which heat is rendered *latent* or insensible.

EXPERIMENT.—Place two iron sauce-pans on a fire, the one *empty,* the other *full* of water. The *empty* sauce-pan will quickly become *red-hot,* the other will become no hotter than boiling water until the water has all boiled away, it will *then* quickly become red-hot like the former one. The heat has been *regulated*—that is, *kept down* and made uniform by the *vapour* carried off from the boiling water.

One pound of boiling water boiled into steam will carry off as much heat in the *latent* or *insensible* form as will raise 5½ pounds of ice-water to boiling point.

It is thus that the skin regulates the animal heat in a Turkish bath, or that a *live* animal might *live* in a *hot* oven in which a *dead* one would be *roasted.* In other words, the *perspiration* keeps down the animal heat. (See *Sudoriparus Glands.*)

290. The Average Temperature of the interior of the human body is 98° to 100° Fahrenheit; but it varies slightly with age, health, exercise, climate, &c. In dangerous fevers, it rises 8° or 10° above this, in consequence of the skin's not performing its functions properly. One of the first objects of the physician, therefore, is to restore the healthy action of this organ.

During infancy and early childhood the power of sustaining the animal heat is most feeble: nothing, therefore, can be more absurd or dangerous than the so frequent custom of attempting to "*harden their constitutions*" by keeping children bare-legged or by indiscriminate cold bathing.

291. Those animals which continually preserve, in temperate and cold climates, a *temperature* considerably above that of the surrounding objects—as in the case of the birds and mammalia—are termed *warm-blooded;* those the temperature of whose bodies is little or nothing above that of the medium by which they are surrounded are termed *cold-blooded* animals.

Clothing promotes the animal heat only by lessening the rapidity of its escape.

CHAPTER X.

DIGESTION.—ORGANS OF DIGESTION.

292. Digestion (from Lat. *dis,* asunder; and *gestus,* carried), in its larger sense, is the process by which the *nutritious* are separated from the *in*nutritious or useless parts of the food, and converted into blood.

As these processes for the most part take place in the *alimentary canal,* they are frequently described as constituting the function of *alimentation.*

293. General View of the Alimentary Canal.—The alimentary canal is a *musculo-membranous* tube, about 26 feet long, which, commencing at the *mouth,* passes, by a series of coils or *convolutions,* the whole length of the body, and terminates at the *rectum.* It consists of *four* coats or layers, as explained in section 316, describing the coats of the stomach. Commencing at the *mouth* and the *lips,* and continued into the *pharynx,* it afterwards, in its downward course, forms the *œsophagus* or gullet; then, *expanding largely,* it forms the *stomach;* again contracting, it forms the *small intestines;* and lastly, again *expanding,* it forms the *large intestines.* (See figs. 53 & 61.)

294. General View of the Course of the Food and the Changes it undergoes.—The solid food, on entering the mouth, is *masticated* or broken up into minute portions and mixed with the saliva (spittle), *swallowed,* and mixed with an *acid* juice poured into it on its entrance into the stomach, the liquid (the *gastric juice*) exuding from its walls. Here the *proteids* are more or less *dissolved* and *absorbed* by the *veins* of the stomach; also so much of the *starch* of the food as has been under the influence of the *saliva* converted into *sugar.* When thus prepared in the stomach it is called *chyme;* the *chyme* then passes into the *small intestines,* where it is mixed with two other juices, this time *not acid,* but *alkaline,* poured out to meet it and make its *fatty* portions soluble, or at least *absorbable.* It is now termed *chyle.* It is gradually *worked* or pressed along the intestines, all the *useful* or *nutritious* parts being gradually *absorbed* by the *lacteals* and *veins,* until its arrival at the end of the *large intestines,* where it is expelled from the body.

295. The *fatty* parts *absorbed* by the *lacteals* make their way directly by the *thoracic* duct to the *left subclavian*

vein, and thence by the *upper vena cava* to the heart. The *dissolved proteids* and the *sugar* (and probably some

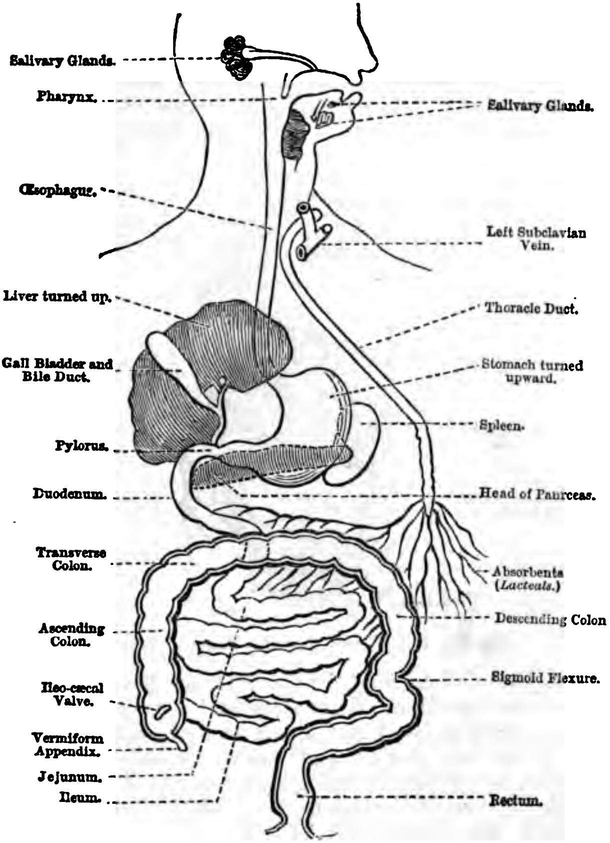


Fig. 53. Showing Course of Food.

of the *fats*) are, however, obliged to take a *longer* and more *circuitous* route on their way to the heart. They are first collected from the *veins* of the *stomach and intestines*, then passed by the *portal vein* to, and circulated through the liver; after which they are passed with the blood from the liver into the *hepatic* veins, hence to the lower *vena cava*, and by it poured into the heart.

296. The Mouth is the *irregular*, somewhat oval-shaped cavity which forms the commencement of the alimentary canal, and in which the food is *masticated*.

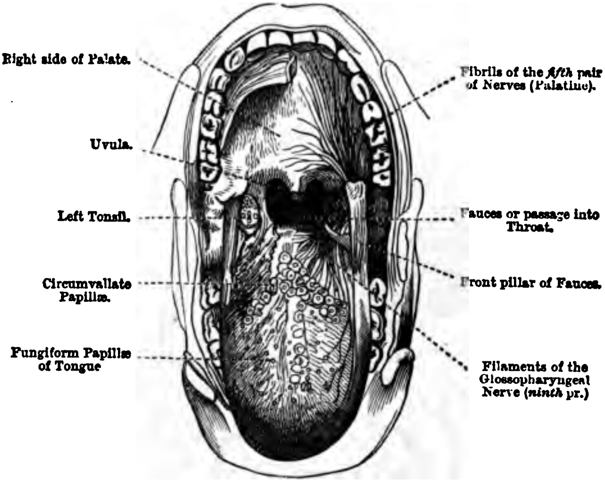

Right side of Palate.
Uvula.
Left Tonsil.
Circumvallate Papillæ.
Fungiform Papillæ of Tongue
Fibrils of the *fifth* pair of Nerves (Palatine).
Fauces or passage into Throat.
Front pillar of Fauces.
Filaments of the Glossopharyngeal Nerve (*ninth* pr.)

Fig. 54. The Mouth showing Tongue, Palate, &c.

It is bounded in front by the lips; on the side, by the cheeks and portions of the *upper* and *lower* jaws; above, by the *hard palate* which forms its roof; behind, by the *soft palate* and *fauces;* and below, by the tongue and mucous membrane, reaching from beneath it to the front of the inside of the lower jaw, which form a sort of movable floor. (See Fig. 54.)

The cavity of the mouth is separated from that of the nose by the *hard* and *soft* palates; the latter, also, with its prolongation, the *uvula*, and with the *epiglottis*, separate it from the *pharynx*.

When the mouth is shut the *dorsum*, or back of the tongue, touches the palate.

297. The mouth contains the tongue and the teeth, by which, with the aid of the jaws and the salivary glands, the food is *masticated* and *insalivated*. It and the tongue are lined with *mucous* membrane, which is more or less studded with little *buccal* glands, about the size of millet seeds, which supply through their ducts, which open into the mouth, a portion of the necessary moisture. The *parotid, sub-maxillary*, and the *sub-lingual* salivary glands, however, supply nearly all the saliva that enters the mouth.

298. Mastication, or Chewing, is the process by which the food is broken, crunched, and ground by the teeth, aided by the tongue, cheeks, lips, and jaws. The object of the process is to overcome the *force of cohesion*, and thus promote the *solution* or liquefaction of the food. It is effected by an up-and-down or *vertical*, an *antero-posterior* or front to back, and a *lateral* or side-to-side (the two latter together producing an *oblique*) motion of the jaws. By the combined movements of the tongue, aided by the contractions of the lips and cheeks, fresh portions of the solid food are continually pressed between the *crowns* of the teeth, until the whole of it is masticated or ground down.

299. Teeth.—Man is provided during life with two *sets* of teeth—the *first* of which appear during infancy—termed the *temporary, deciduous* or *milk teeth;* the *second* set, which *begins* to appear during childhood, but which is not *completed* until the *wisdom*-teeth have appeared, about the commencement of *adult* life, are termed the *permanent teeth.*

300. Structure of a Tooth.—Each tooth consists of three parts—viz, a *crown*, a *neck*, and a *fang* or root.

The *crown* or body of the tooth is that portion of it which projects above the *gum;* the *fang* is that portion which is buried in the *gum;* the *neck* is the *constriction* which separates the *crown* from the *fang.*

The crown of the tooth is covered with *enamel;* the fang is covered with bony tissue, called the *crusta petrosa* or *cementum;* but the mass of the tooth consists of *dentine.* (See figs. 30, 31, and 56.)

Each tooth also contains a *central cavity,* termed the *pulp cavity,* which encloses the *tooth-pulp,* consisting of *nerves* and blood-vessels. When these are exposed to the air by the *decay* of the tooth, it causes toothache. The tooth *cavity* has but one opening at the end of the *fang,* through which the *nerves* and *blood-vessels* pass to the tooth.

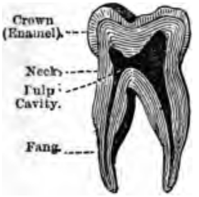


Fig. 55.—Vertical Section of a Molar Tooth.

301. The Permanent Teeth, when complete, are 32 in number: they are arranged in the form of *arches* in the sockets or *alveoli* of the upper and lower jaws. (See fig. 54.)

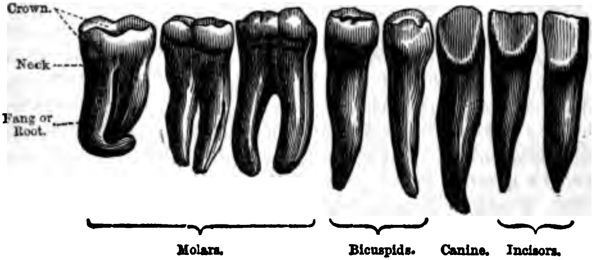


Fig. 56.—Showing Differently Shaped Teeth.

Each dental arch (gum) contains 16 teeth. These sixteen teeth contain *four* types, shapes, or varieties, as shown in the diagram (fig. 56)—viz., four *incisor,* two *canine,* four *bicuspid,* and six *molar* teeth.

The Incisor, or cutting teeth, are the four chisel-edged or bevelled (from the interior) teeth situated in front of each jaw. They are used in *cutting* the food, and are largely developed in the *rodentia* (gnawing animals), as in rats, squirrels, and rabbits. They possess but *one* fang.

The Canine Teeth (cuspids) are the two larger single-pointed *one-fanged* teeth in each jaw, situated one on each side of the. *incisors.*

The Bicuspid Teeth (from Lat. *cuspis*, point of a spear), *premolars* or *false molars*, are double pointed at the top of the crown. They possess but *one* fang, and are placed *outside* the *canine teeth*, two on each side of each jaw, making eight in all.

The True Molars (from Lat. *mola*, a mill-stone) are the *three* last teeth on each side of each jaw (twelve in all). They are the largest of the teeth: their crowns present four or five points or *cusps*, and they have two or five fangs. Their function is to *smash* and *grind* the food.

The Milk, *temporary*, or *deciduous* teeth, consist of a series of twenty teeth—viz., four incisors, two canine, and four molars in *each jaw*, which soon *decay*.

Their removal, which is necessary from the growth of the jaws, is effected by the permanent teeth, whose growth from below causes their crowns to press against the fangs of the upper row of temporary teeth; thus stopping the supply of blood to them, and consequently arresting their *nutrition* and causing their *decay*.

302. Insalivation is the process by which the food during mastication is mixed with *air* and *saliva*. The *saliva* facilitates swallowing by *lubricating* the food,—it makes the *starch* in the food *soluble*, by ultimately converting it into *sugar*. It also makes the food more permeable to the juices of the stomach. It promotes *taste* by dissolving the sapid substances in the food.

303. The Salivary Glands are the three pairs of *conglomerate* glands which secrete the saliva. The largest are the *parotid glands*, situated immediately below and in front of the ear: they weigh from ½ oz. to 1 oz. each. Their *ducts*, about 2½ inches long, open upon the inner surface of the cheek by orifices opposite the upper second molar teeth.

The *sub-maxillary glands* are situated near the neck, in the lower jaw, under the floor of the mouth; their *ducts*, about 2 inches long, open under the tip of the tongue.

The *sublingual glands* are also situated, as their name implies, under the tongue; but not quite so far back as the *sub-maxillary*. Their *ducts* also pour the saliva into the mouth under the tip of the tongue. For the more minute structure of these glands, (see section 355.)

304. The Saliva or *spittle* is the thin, watery, slightly viscid and frothy liquid poured into the mouth from the *buccal* and *salivary glands.* It usually contains a little *mucus,* also *epithelial scales,* which render it slightly *opalescent.*

It contains a small quantity of a peculiar *nitrogenous* principle, capable of converting starch into sugar; this principle, which does *not* act on *fats* or *albuminous* substances (proteids), is termed *ptyalin.*

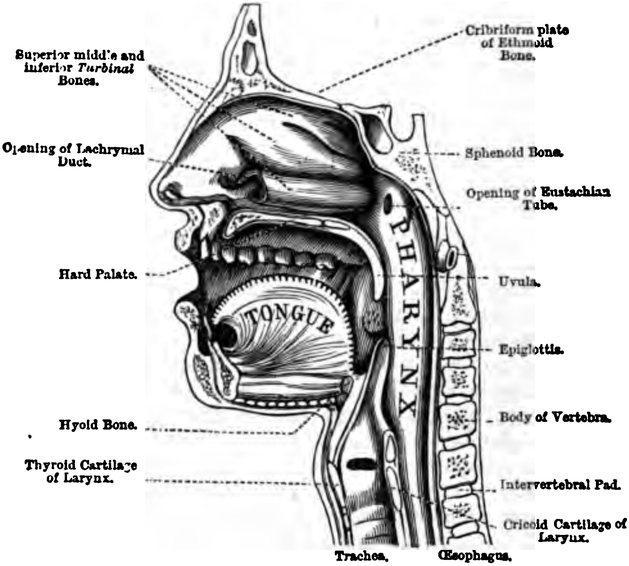

Superior middle and inferior *Turbinal* Bones.
Opening of Lachrymal Duct.
Hard Palate.
Hyoid Bone.
Thyroid Cartilage of Larynx.
Cribriform plate of Ethmoid Bone.
Sphenoid Bone.
Opening of Eustachian Tube.
Uvula.
Epiglottis.
Body of Vertebra.
Intervertebral Pad.
Cricoid Cartilage of Larynx.
Trachea.
Œsophagus.
TONGUE
PHARYNX

Fig. 57. Section of Mouth, Nose, Pharynx, Œsophagus, Larynx, Trachea, &c.

305. The Pharynx (from Gr. *pharugx,* the gullet) is the funnel-shaped part of the alimentary canal, which is placed immediately behind the mouth, nose, and larynx. It is separated from the cavity of the mouth by the *soft palate, uvula,* and the *epiglottis* (see fig. 57). It is about

4½ inches long, varies from 2 inches at its upper to 1 inch at its lower extremity, and has seven openings into it—viz., the two *posterior nares* (nostrils), the two *Eustachian tubes*, the *mouth*, *larynx*, and *œsophagus*. Like the rest of the alimentary canal, its interior is lined by *mucous* membrane. It is supplied with several muscles.

The *pharynx* always remains *open*, to allow air to pass from the mouth and nose to the *trachea*. The sides of the *œsophagus* and the *stomach collapse* and wrinkle up when they are not active.

306. The Œsophagus (from Gr. *oisō*, I carry; and *phago*, I eat), gullet or food-pipe, is the *musculo-membranous* tube which forms that part of the alimentary canal which passes from the *pharynx* through the *diaphragm* to the *cardiac orifice* of the stomach. It is about 9 inches long, and forms the narrowest part of the alimentary canal. Its *upper* part is supplied with *striated* muscular fibre, its lower part with *non-striated* muscular fibre only. (See figs. 53 and 57.)

307. Deglutition, or *swallowing*, is the process by which food or drink is *forced* down the *œsophagus* or gullet into the stomach. That both solid food and drink do not simply *fall* by the action of *gravity* into the stomach is proved by acrobats and others, who sometimes perform the feat of eating and drinking "while standing on their heads." In the case of horses and other similar animals, the food and drink have to pass from the mouth upwards, against gravity, before they can reach the stomach.

308. If the student carefully watch the process of *swallowing*, as it takes place in his own person, he will find that, almost unconsciously, as the food becomes *masticated*, *saturated*, and *covered* with *saliva*, the *tongue* collects it into a mass or *bolus*, passes it along its *dorsum* or back, *thrusts* it by a *backward* movement into the *pharynx*, where it is immediately and involuntarily laid hold of by its muscular walls, and *forced* down the *œsophagus*, gullet or food-pipe, into the stomach.

309. Simultaneously with, or immediately preceding the food's being thrust into the pharynx, the *soft palate* (*velum palati*) is *pushed up*, by which the food is shut out from the *nasal cavities*, and the *epiglottis* is *pushed down*, so as to act as a sort of bridge or *trap-door*, by which the food is *shut* out from the *trachea*, in which, if it entered, it would produce great disturbance, or (as it has in some cases) even fatal injury, and *over* which it passes into the *œsophagus*, gullet or food-pipe, the *trachea* meanwhile, for its better protection, being drawn *under* the tongue.

310. When tightly laid hold of by the *muscular fibres* of the lower *pharyngeal* walls, the food is driven downward by the contraction of the muscular fibres *behind* it, those in front being comparatively loose, the muscular *contraction* forming a sort of ring or constriction running down the tube, and driving the food before it until it is forced into the stomach.

311. The whole act of swallowing, *after* the food has passed into the *pharynx*, is an entirely *involuntary* or *reflex* action. This is proved by the fact, often discovered accidentally, that when a cherry, or a nut, or a similar object, reaches the back part of the mouth, so as to be just entering the *pharynx*, we "feel it go," but cannot stop it, however much we may try. *Small* objects, as pills, are more difficult to swallow than *larger* ones, because of their *smallness* making it more difficult for the *upper pharyngeal walls* to lay hold of them. For this reason it is easier to swallow a *very large* than a *small* pill.

312. Drinking essentially resembles the swallowing of *solid* food. In both cases the substances are forced down the *œsophagus* into the stomach; but the process by which fluid reaches the *pharynx* is very different to that by which a solid is conveyed to it. The fluid in this case reaches the œsophagus by *suction*—that is, by the *pressure* of the atmosphere.

313. The Stomach or principal organ of digestion is a large (when distended), bent, conical, or "bag-pipe" shaped bag, pouch, or expansion of the alimentary canal, capable of containing three to five pints of liquid. When moderately full, it is about 12 inches long, and about 4 inches in its larger diameter.

Its *left* extremity, the convexity of which lies against the concave side of the *spleen*, is termed the *greater* or *splenic* end: it contains the cardiac pouch, or dilatation; also termed the greater *cul-de-sac* or *fundus* of the stomach. Its *right* extremity, which is much smaller than the *left*, terminates at the *pylorus*, where it joins the *duodenum* or first portion of the small intestines.

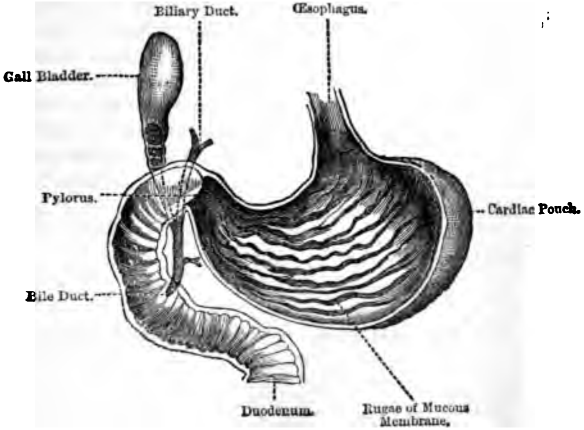


Fig. 58. Showing the Stomach and its interior lining of Mucous Membrane, the Duodenum with the Valvulæ Conniventes in its interior; also the Gall Bladder and Bile Ducts.

314. The stomach has two orifices, the *œsophageal* or *cardiac orifice* on the top, so called because it is on the same side of the body as the heart; and the right *pyloric orifice*, by which it opens into the intestines. The muscular fibre around the latter is thickened and so arranged as to

form a kind of *sphincter* muscle, termed the *pylorus* or *pyloric valve.*

The *walls* of the stomach consist of four coats, the inner or *mucous* coat of which is very complex, being abundantly supplied with minute follicles, the *gastric follicles* or *tubuli.*

315. Immediately food is passed into the stomach, it begins to *contract,* and *roll* the food about by its *peristaltic* action, while simultaneously the gastric juice is poured out of the numerous follicles in its walls, and thus becomes thoroughly mixed with it. These movements were actually observed by Dr. Beaumont in the stomach of a patient who had suffered from a gun-shot wound.

The stomach lies *transversely* across the upper part of the front of the cavity of the abdomen (see fig. 2), its *left* lying under the ribs and diaphragm, and in contact with the spleen; its *right* end underlies the liver.

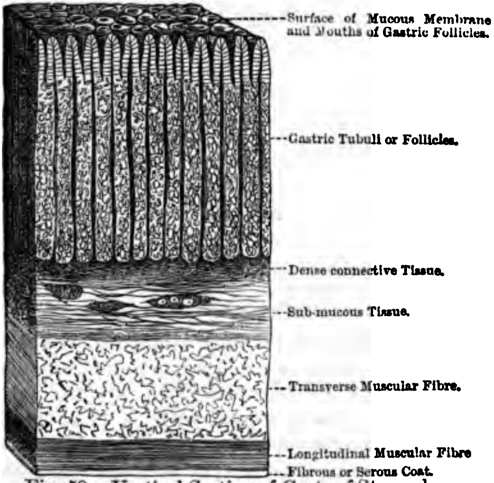

Surface of Mucous Membrane and Mouths of Gastric Follicles.
Gastric Tubuli or Follicles.
Dense connective Tissue.
Sub-mucous Tissue.
Transverse Muscular Fibre.
Longitudinal Muscular Fibre
Fibrous or Serous Coat.

Fig. 59. Vertical Section of Coats of Stomach.

316. The Coats of the Stomach.—The stomach is usually described as consisting of four coats—

1. An outer *fibrous* coat, the *serous* coat.
2. A *muscular* coat consisting of longitudinal, transverse, and oblique smooth (unstriated) muscular fibre, by which the peristaltic movement is carried on.
3. A *submucous* coat of *loose connective* tissue, forming a matrix, in which the blood-vessels and nerves break up and ramify before reaching the mucous coat.
4. A *mucous* coat, consisting of a layer of *basement membrane*, covered by an inner layer of *epithelial cells*. Its surface is covered with minute *shallow* pits or *alveoli*. The bottoms of these shallow pits are studded with the mouths of the *gastric follicles* which dip into this membrane. This membrane is abundantly supplied with nerves and blood-vessels; its surface is greater than that of its other coats: it therefore collects in *rugae* (folds) when the stomach is empty, as shown in fig. 59.

317. The Gastric Follicles or Tubuli consist of minute sub-cylindrical tubes or follicles, dipping into the substance of the *mucous* membrane. These follicles consist of a tube wall of fine structureless *basement membrane*, lined on the interior with *glandular* and *columnar* epithelium, the former occupying the lower ends of the follicles, the latter the upper third of their length—that

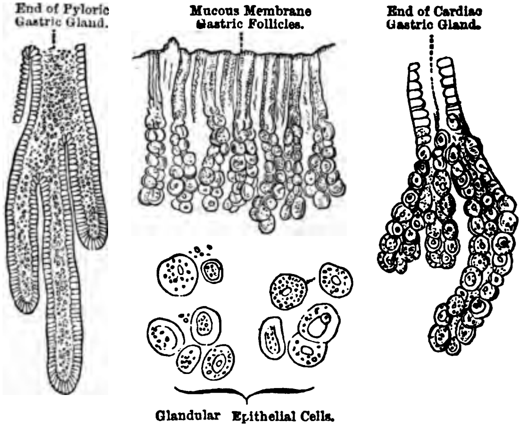

End of Pyloric Gastric Gland.
Mucous Membrane Gastric Follicles.
End of Cardiac Gastric Gland.
Glandular Epithelial Cells.

Fig. 60. Showing the Structure of the Gastric Follicles.

is, the portion near their mouths. The deeper or *closed* ends of these follicles often divide into two or more *finger-shaped* branches or pouches. Each follicle is surrounded by a net-work of *capillaries*. (See Fig. 60.)

318. **The Gastric Juice** is the clear, colourless, or pale straw coloured, slightly acid liquid secreted by the *mucous membrane* of the stomach and its follicles. It readily mixes with water, has powerful *antiseptic* properties, *coagulates* albumen, and at 90° to 100° Fahr. is a good solvent of *proteid* or *albuminoid* substances, converting them into a liquid termed *peptone*. It not only does not appear to act on *fats* and *starches*, but arrests the action of other juices upon them.

Its *solvent* power over the *proteids* appears to depend upon the presence of a peculiar principle termed *pepsin*. It also contains *hydrochloric* or *lactic* acid. The following table shows its approximate composition:—

Gastric Juice,	Water, about . .	99·2
	Pepsin, ,, ...	·3
	Hydrochloric acid,	·2
	Salts, about . . .	·2

319. **Chymification, or Gastric Digestion,** is the process by which the food is converted into *chyme*, by the action of the *saliva* and *gastric juice*.

320. **The Chyme** is the slightly *acid* gruel or pea-soup like more or less viscid product of *gastric* digestion; it varies considerably in appearance and consistence with the nature of the diet. It consists of a heterogeneous *mixture* of various substances, comprising chiefly the *indigestible* portions of the food, the *amyloids* (starchy substances), not yet converted into *sugar*, and the sugar and *peptone* not yet absorbed; also, more or less *saliva* and *gastric juice*.

321. **Artificial Digestion.**—Gastric digestion may be readily imitated *artificially* by preparing artificial *gastric juice*, by immersing small portions of the mucous membrane of the stomach of a pig in water, at 100° Fahr.,

containing hydro-chloric acid. Prepare *three* bottles in the manner described, then proceed as follows:—

EXPERIMENT I.—Into the *first* bottle, containing the *peptic glands* in the mucous membrane, which is immersed in dilute hydrochloric acid—the whole being allowed to cool—place a small piece of meat or boiled white of egg—*not minced.* Keep the mixture *still.*

EXPERIMENT II.—Into the *second* bottle, similarly prepared, place meat or white of egg—minced. Keep the bottle *still,* but *heat* to about 100° Fahr., about the temperature of the stomach.

EXPERIMENT III.—Prepare the *third* bottle as in Experiment II., but keep it continually *agitated* as well as warm (100° Fahr.) The *agitation* is equivalent to the *peristaltic movement* of the stomach.

Examine in the course of about *two* hours. The meat and egg of the *third* bottle will have nearly disappeared. This illustrates natural healthy digestion, in which *mastication, warmth,* and vigorous *peristaltic* movement all combine to promote digestion. The meat and egg of the *second* bottle will only very partially have been dissolved. This shows the importance of the *peristaltic* movement in promoting digestion. The *first*—the cold bottle containing *un*minced meat—will probably show little or no signs of change. This shows the great importance of thorough mastication, and the disadvantage of cooling the stomach by cold drinks or otherwise during gastric digestion.

322. **The Pylorus** (from Gr. *pule,* gate; *ouros,* guardian), or pyloric valve, is a sort of *sphincter,* or *ring*-shaped muscle, formed by the reduplication of *mucous* and *muscular* membranes of the stomach. It encircles and regulates the size of the *pyloric* aperture, only allowing, until the stomach becomes exhausted from over-work, the *finer* portions of the *chyme* to *strain* through into the duodenum. (See figs. 53 and 57).

323. **Large and Small Intestines.**—The *small intestines,* consisting of the *duodenum, jejunum,* and *ileum,* are *coiled* up in the abdomen, being enclosed in the *mesentery,* and attached by it to the spine. They form a tube about 20 feet long. The surface of their interior lining of mucous membrane is increased by the *valvulæ conniventes,*

which consist of small transverse circular folds of *mucous* membrane, which promote absorption by the gentle resistance they offer to the passage of the food.

The *large intestines* commence at the end of the *ileum*, and terminate at the *rectum*. Their exterior surface, excepting that of the rectum, differs from that of the small intestines in being "puckered up." This puckered appearance is due to three *flat bands of muscular fibres* which run along their exterior, and which, being *shorter* than the tube to which they are attached, produce the puckering referred to. They are about six feet long, and

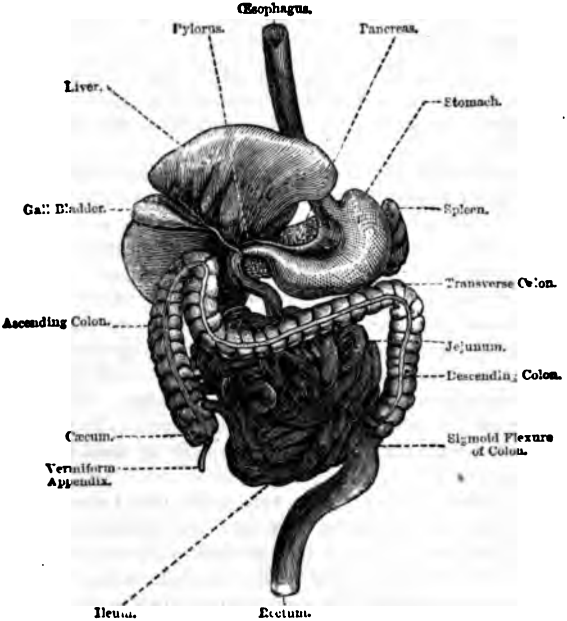


Fig. 61. Large and Small Intestines.

consist of the *cæcum*, the *colon* (ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid flexure), and the *rectum*.

The *mucous membrane* lining the interior of both the large and the small intestines is more or less covered with *villi*, *Peyer's glands*, and *Lieberkühn's* follicles.

324. Intestinal Digestion.—Chylification.—The *chyme*, having passed into the small intestines, receives and mixes with the *bile* and the *pancreatic juice*, by which the *fatty* parts of the food are reduced to the form of a sort of *emulsion*, termed *chyle*, which is absorbed by the *lymphatics* of the intestines (the *lacteals*). The conversion of the starch into sugar, and its absorption, as also that of the remaining *peptone* by the veins, are likewise completed in the intestine. The *indigestible* parts of the food are pushed along, losing more and more of the nutritious matter, the peptone, fats, and sugar mixed with it, until, after passing through the *cæcum*, they become more or less acid, acquire the peculiar offensive fæcal odour, and ultimately passing through the *rectum*, where they collect until they are expelled as fæces. (See fig. 53.)

325. The Duodenum (from Lat. *duodeni*, twelve), or first portion of the small intestines, was so called because it is about 10 or 12 finger breadths in length, and extends from the *pylorus* to the *jejunum*. It forms a horse-shoe curve, the *convexity* being to the right, and the *concavity*, which receives the *head* of the *pancreas*, to the *left*. Its *inner* or *mucous* surface is studded with Brunner's glands, Lieberkühn's follicles, and *villi*. It is also abundantly furnished with *valvulæ conniventes*. It is here that the *bile* and pancreatic juices mix with the *chyme*, and that the *chyle* begins to form. (See fig. 61.)

326. The Jejunum (from Lat. *jejunus*, empty) is the *second* portion of the small intestines. It owes its name to the fact that it is usually found *empty* in the dead body. It extends from the *duodenum* to the *ileum*. It differs but slightly from the *duodenum* in general character and structure. Its walls contain Peyer's glands, Lieberkühn's follicles, villi, &c. (See fig. 61.)

327. **The Ileum** (from Gr. *eileo,* I twist) forms the last and narrowest portion of the small intestines. It owes its name to its numerous coils or *convolutions.* It opens into the *cæcum,* or first portion of the large intestine, by means of the *ileo-cæcal* or *ileo-colic* valve. (See fig. 61.)

328. **The Peritoneum** is the *serous* membrane which lines the walls of the cavity of the abdomen, and is then reflected over the stomach and intestines, liver, and other organs, so as to form, more or less complete, external coverings in addition to their own coats.

329. **The Mesentery** is that portion of the *peritoneum* which completely surrounds the external wall of the small intestines, and, collecting them into folds or *convolutions,* attaches them to the *spinal column.* The *lacteals* and *mesenteric glands* are contained between the two inner surfaces of the mesentery, just as knotted threads would lie between two leaves in a book.

330. **The Cæcum** (Lat. *cæcus,* blind) is the large blind *cul de sac,* or pouch, which forms the commencement of the large intestine. It is about *three* inches long. It is here the undigested food begins to acquire its fæcal odour. (See fig. 61.)

From the centre of its lower extremity proceeds a narrow tubular appendage, about the thickness of a goose quill, and three to six inches long, termed the *vermiform appendix.*

331. **The Colon** (from Gr. *koilos,* hollow) commences at the *cæcum,* on the right side of the lower part of the abdomen; it passes upwards, forming the *ascending* colon, until it reaches the liver, when it crosses horizontally to the left side, forming the *transverse* colon; after this it descends on the left, forming the *descending* colon, and making, during a portion of its downward passage, a letter S bend—which is therefore termed the *sigmoid flexure.* The food during digestion has to ascend a portion of the colon *against gravity;* tight stays impedes this movement, and therefore hinders digestion. (See fig. 61.)

332. **The Rectum,** or straight gut, is the terminal portion of the intestines, in which the *undigested* food

collects before it leaves the system. It commences at the *sigmoid flexure* of the colon; its termination is guarded by a *sphincter* muscle. It is smooth, and not *sacculated* like the rest of the large intestines. (See fig. 61.)

333. **The Intestinal Villi** (from Lat. *villus*, hair-nap) consist of minute thread-like processes or projections of the *mucous* membrane of the *small* intestines. Each process or *villus* consists of a *central lacteal* vessel, surrounded by a *capillary net-work*, and supported by *granular* matter, the whole being invested with a covering of *basement membrane* and external layer of *columnar epithelium*. (See fig. 62.)

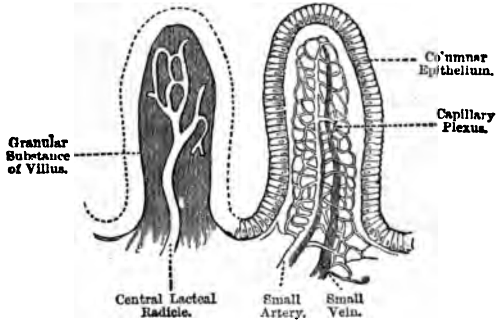


Fig. 62. Showing Structure of Two Intestinal Villi.

The chyle during *absorption* passes through the *epithelial layer* and *basement membrane* into the interior of the central *lacteal*.

CHAPTER XI.

FOOD AND NUTRITION.

334. **Food** or aliment may be defined as consisting of those *external nutritious* substances which are passed into the *alimentary canal* for the purpose of being *digested*, and restoring the *losses* of the system.

335. Classification of Food.—Food is sometimes classified under *two* heads:—

(1.) *Heat-forming*, fuel, or respiratory food, which does contain *carbon* and *hydrogen*, which serve as sources of heat, but which does not contain *nitrogen*, and, therefore, which cannot completely restore the *lost* or *wasted* tissues.

(2.) *Flesh-forming*, plastic, albuminoid, proteid, or *nitrogenous* food, which *does* contain *nitrogen*, in addition to *carbon*, *hydrogen*, and *oxygen*, and is therefore capable of *completely* restoring the *lost* tissues.

This *classification* is probably *erroneous* and *misleading*, since, in all probability, the so-called *heat-forming* foods contribute to the *repair* and *nutrition* of the tissues, and the *flesh-forming* or *nitrogenous* to the maintenance of the *animal heat.*

336. **Food Stuffs** may be divided into *four* classes, as shown in the following Table. For a *description* of the respective substances contained in the Table, see sections given:—

Food Stuffs.	Inorganic or Mineral	Salts. Water.		
	Vital or Organic	Amyloids,	Starch, Dextrine, Gum, Sugar,	Contain Carbon, Hydrogen, and Oxygen. (See Sections 116 to 191.)
		Fats,		(Section 120.)
		Proteids,	Albumen, Fibrin, Syntonin, Casein, Gluten, Chondrin, Gelatin,	Contain Carbon, Hydrogen, Oxygen, and *Nitrogen.* (See Sections 105 to 114.)

337. **The Digestibility** of a substance, or the *facility* or rapidity with which it can be digested, has no relation to its *nutritiousness* or usefulness as a *tissue-former.* Many of the most *nutritious* substances, as cheese, beans, peas, &c., are exceedingly *indigestible;* whereas boiled rice and some other substances, which are digested

with great rapidity, are almost useless as tissue-formers. *Cooking* promotes the digestibility of vegetable food chiefly by breaking down the cell-walls, consisting chiefly of indigestible *cellulose*, and thus exposing, as in the boiling of a potato, the cell-contents to the action of the digestive fluids. Raw meat is comparatively indigestible, because of the *sarcolemma*, the *fascia* and *cell-walls* of indigestible connective tissue, which enclose and protect the muscular and fatty substances of which flesh meat is composed. When cooked, these indigestible insoluble protecting *sheaths* become converted into *jelly* and *dissolved*, and the nutriment they enclose exposed to the *solvent* action of the *gastric* and other *juices*. Cooking, also, makes the food more savoury and agreeable to the palate.

The following Table, from Dr. Andrew Combe's *Physiology of Digestion*, shows the relative digestibility of different kinds of food, as observed by Dr. Beaumont in the stomach of a patient in whom a gun-shot wound so healed up as to leave a sort of external door or flap in his abdomen, through which Dr Beaumont could look into and see what was going on in his stomach:—

TABLE SHOWING DIGESTIBILITY OF DIFFERENT KINDS OF FOOD.

	h.	m.		h.	m.		h.	m.
Rice, boiled,	1	0	Milk, raw, .	2	0	Oysters, raw,	3	0
Tripe, . .	1	0	Potatoes, bake.	2	30	Bread, . .	3	30
Eggs, raw, .	1	30	Apple Dumpling, . .	2	30	Beef, salt, .	4	15
Apples, raw, but ripe, .	1	30	Beef-steak, bd.	3	0	Duck, roasted,	4	30
Tapioca, .	2	0	Mutton, boil.,	3	0	Pork, ,,	5	15

338. **Relation of Food to Daily Loss.**—About 7,200 grains of chemically dry solid matter are *daily* lost through the lungs, skin, and kidneys of an average active healthy man; or, in other words, are *consumed* in the development of the *vital* and *mechanical* forces of the body; about 800 grains per day of *indigested* or *useless* chemically dry solid matter will pass off by the rectum. The whole of the substance thus *lost* must be *restored*

to the body, in the *first* instance, in the form of *food*, which must contain the actual *chemical elements* lost in *sufficient quantity*, to replace each element in the *requisite proportions*. Of the 7,200 grains of solid matter daily lost, say 4,000 or upwards consist of carbon, and 300 of nitrogen.

339. **Economical Admixture of Food.**—To obtain the requisite 4,000 grains of carbon per day from dry *proteids*, a man would be compelled to eat about 7,500 grains; but this would give him nearly 1,200 grains of *nitrogen*, or nearly *four* times the quantity of nitrogen he would require. That is, if he lived on *fatless* meat, he would require 5 to 6 ℔s per day to give him the necessary carbon; whereas he might get the necessary *carbon* and *nitrogen* from 4 to 5 ℔s of *bread*, or from a mixed diet, consisting of 2 ℔s of bread and ¾ ℔ of meat. He might also get the same from about 1 ℔ of *fatless* meat, and ½ ℔ of *fat*, or 1 ℔ of *sugar*. If he attempted to get the necessary quantity of *nitrogen* from a purely potato diet—a comparatively *innutritious* diet—he would probably be compelled, in order to get the necessary *nitrogen*, to eat 10 ℔s to 12 ℔s or upwards per day. On the other hand, if he tried to live on a highly *nutritious* and exclusively *proteid* diet, he might die of starvation in consequence of the great loss of vital power he would sustain in the digestive attempts to get the *necessary carbon* under these unfavourable conditions. In fact, in all probability, after a time, his vital powers would give way in his attempt to obtain the materials necessary for subsistence.

340. **Nutrition** (from Lat. *nutrio*, I nourish) is the process by which the tissues of the living body are repaired, built up, or their loss of substance restored out of material supplied them by the *liquor sanguinis* or *blood-plasma*. The chief agents of nutrition are the capillaries.

Exercise, mental and physical, promotes *nutrition* by increasing the *circulation* in, and consequent supply of, *nutritive* material to the tissues of the organs exercised. Physical (muscular) exercise promotes the circulation by alternately compressing and relaxing the veins and arteries by which the blood is driven (especially through the smaller vessels and capillaries, in which friction must be very great), with increased velocity. (See *Vaso-motor Nerves.*)

CHAPTER XII.

THE LYMPHATICS, LACTEALS, AND THORACIC DUCT.

341. **The Lymphatic or Absorbent System** consists of the *thoracic duct*, right lymphatic duct, receptaculum chyli, the lymphatic vessels, the *lacteals*, and the *lymphatic* and *mesenteric* glands (see fig. 63), which shows the most important of these organs as they appear injected with mercury.

342. **The Thoracic Duct** is the terminal and largest or main trunk of the lymphatic system. It is about 18 or 20 inches long, and about the diameter of a moderate sized goose-quill. Commencing in the abdomen, somewhere opposite the *second lumbar* vertebra, it passes through the diaphragm by the aortic opening, ascending near the vertebral column to the neck; it then curves downward, and joins the *subclavian* vein at the angle formed by its junction with the *jugular* vein. Its structure is very similar to that of the veins, and it is numerously supplied with *valves* (see fig. 63). The *right lymphatic duct* is small and unimportant; it contains no *chyle.*

343. **The Receptaculum Chyli,** or cistern of Piquet, is the large triangular *dilatation* in which the thoracic duct commences.

344. **The Lacteals** are the *lymphatic* vessels of the intestines. They are so called because of their *milky* appearance, when filled with *chyle*, *two* or *three* hours after a meal. The primary lacteals commence in the middle of the *villi* of the intestines, where they form microscopic club-like tubes, or minute microscopic plexuses. (See fig. 63.)

When they pass out of the basis of the *villi*, they unite in the *submucous* tissue beneath, to form larger and larger vessels, which *anastomose* and ramify with each other like the veins and arteries; their walls also have a similar structure to those of the blood-vessels; but they have a *knotted* or *beaded* appearance, because of their greater number of valves.

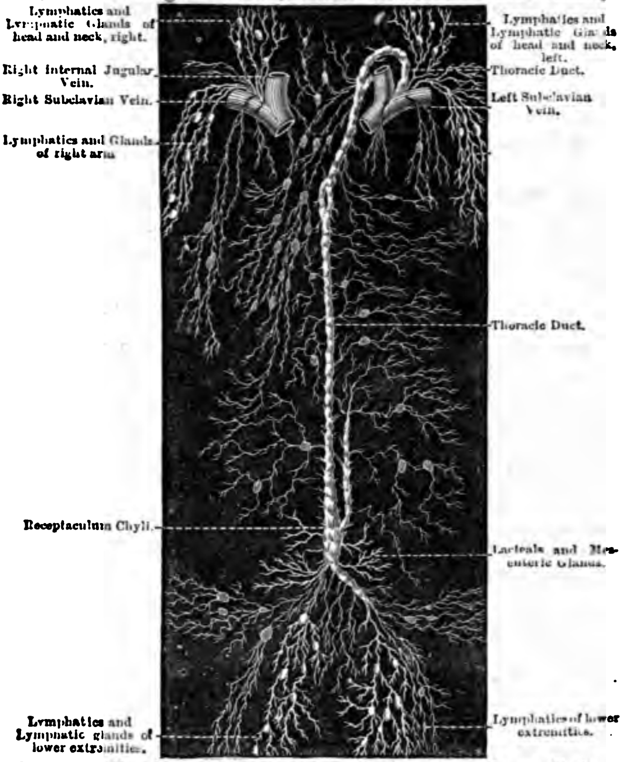

Lymphatics and Lymphatic Glands of head and neck, right.
Right Internal Jugular Vein.
Right Subclavian Vein.
Lymphatics and Glands of right arm
Receptaculum Chyli.
Lymphatics and Lymphatic glands of lower extremities.
Lymphatics and Lymphatic Glands of head and neck, left.
Thoracic Duct.
Left Subclavian Vein.
Thoracic Duct.
Lacteals and Mesenteric Glands.
Lymphatics of lower extremities.

Fig. 63. Showing the Principal Lymphatics of the Human Body. The small nodular bodies are the *Lymphatic Glands*.

345. **The Lymphatics** are the vessels which *absorb* and elaborate the *lymph*, and convey it to the *thoracic* duct. For a long time the smaller lymphatics escaped detection, because of the *transparency* of their walls and of the contained *lymph*. There are two sets of lymphatics —the deep and the superficial. They are distributed to all parts of the body, except the brain, the spinal cord, and the interior of the eye. (See fig. 63.)

346. **The Lymphatic Glands** are small, solid, rounded or oval, pinkish, glandular bodies, which lie in the course of the lymphatics, and through which they pass on their way to the *thoracic duct* (see fig. 63.) They vary in size from that of a hemp-seed to that of an almond. The lymphatic vessel which passes *to* the gland is termed the *afferent* vessel; that which *leaves* it, the *efferent* vessel. The chief lymphatic glands in the body are—the *cervical* (neck), the *axillary* (arm-pit), the *lumbar* (loins), the *inguinal* (groin), *mesenteric* and the *femoral* lymphatics (inside the thigh). The *lymph* in the *efferent* vessels contains a greater number of *lymph corpuscles* than that in the *afferent* lymphatic vessels.

347. **The Mesenteric Glands** are the *lymphatic* glands of the *lacteals*, so called because they are contained within the folds of the *mesentery:* they assist in elaborating the chyle.

348. **The Lymph** is the transparent, colourless, *coagulable* liquid contained in the lymphatics. It is supposed to consist of those portions of the *liquor sanguinis* which, having *exuded* through the walls of the capillaries, and bathed the tissues for the *purpose* of their *nutrition*, has *not* been *appropriated* by them and has therefore been *absorbed* by the *lymphatics*, to be restored by them and *re-mixed* with the blood. It resembles diluted *liquor sanguinis*, but contains a few *colourless corpuscles* resembling those of the blood.

Lymph differs from *blood* in containing more water, fewer *white*, and no *red* corpuscles.

349. **The Chyle** (from Gr. *chulos*, juice) is the *milky-white*, *coagulable*, more or less *fatty* and *alkaline* liquid

which is formed in the intestines after the mixture of the *bile* and *pancreatic* juice with the *chyme*. It contains minute colourless corpuscles and oil globules. It is chiefly absorbed by the *lacteals* during the passage of the food through the *intestines*, and conveyed by them through the *mesenteric* glands, where it becomes more or less organized by the development of *chyle corpuscles* (which resemble, though smaller, the *colourless corpuscles* of the blood) to the *thoracic duct*, by which it is poured into the *left subclavian vein*, and thus mixed with the blood.

The *fatty* portions of the food find their way into the blood as *chyle*.

CHAPTER XIII.

SECRETION AND EXCRETION—STRUCTURE OF GLANDS.

350. **Secretion** is the process by which solids or liquids, differing from the constituents of the blood, and necessary for the proper performance of the functions of the body, are elaborated or separated from it by means of *glands* or other organs, as in the secretion of the *saliva*, and the *gastric* and *pancreatic* juices.

The term *secretion* is also frequently applied to designate the *substance* secreted.

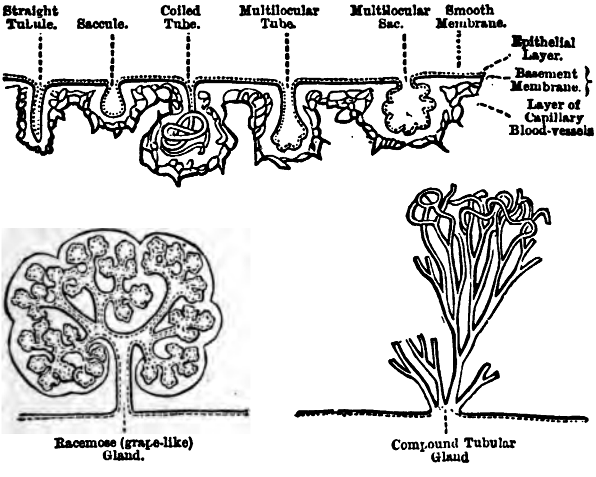
Several of the glands rank in size and importance among the chief organs of the body. Glands are of *two* kinds—*secretory*, as the *salivary glands* and the *pancreas;* and *excretory*, as the *liver*, the *kidneys*, and the *sudoriparous glands* of the skin.

351. **Excretion** is the process by which waste, useless and injurious matter, is separated from the blood and thrown out of the body by the *excretory glands*.

352. **A Gland** is an organ whose function is that of *secretion* or *excretion*, or both combined, and which contains *ducts* or vessels for the escape of matter elaborated or excreted by the gland. Secreting organs which do not contain ducts are not termed glands, as the mucous

and serous membranes. The principal glands of the body are the liver, the kidneys, the pancreas, the mammary, and the lachrymal glands. Other less important glands are the sudoriparous glands, the sebaceous, the ceruminous, the Meibomian glands, and the glands of Brunner, Peyer, and Lieberkühn.

353. Plan of Structure of Glands.—The *plan* of structure, even of the most complicated and elaborate glands, is exceedingly simple, and should be thoroughly understood by the student before he enters on the study of the *special* glands.



Racemose (grape-like) Gland.

Compound Tubular Gland

Fig. 64. Showing Plan of Structure of Secreting Membranes and Glands.

Every gland, besides the fibrous matrix of connective tissue by which its various parts are bound together, contains two distinct or *specific* structures, viz. :—

1. A *vascular* structure, consisting of a layer or network of capillary blood-vessels, by which blood for the secretion

of the required substance is abundantly distributed through the minuter structures of the gland.

2. A *secreting* structure, consisting of—

(*a*) An *inner* layer of exceedingly thin, structureless, *basement* membrane, in contact with the capillary layer.

(*b*) An *outer* layer of *epithelial* cells, which vary in size and thickness in different glands, and even in different parts of the same gland.

354. It is this latter layer of *epithelial* cells by which the *work* of the gland is performed. They possess a peculiar *selective* power, not yet explained, by which they are enabled to abstract from the blood the materials they require, and convert or elaborate them into the substance whose formation or production is the specific duty of the *gland* into whose structure they enter.

355. These two structures, *vascular* and *epithelial,* are everywhere intimately united, so as to form, as it were, one continuous membrane. This compound membrane or structure, variously *packed* or *folded* so as to get large surfaces within small bulk, and supplied with nerves and blood-vessels to convey fresh blood *to* and *from* the gland, and *ducts* for the removal of the substance secreted, forms, with the connective tissue by which the various parts are bound together, and the membrane which surrounds the gland, the entire structure of a typical gland.

356. The general *type of structure* of a gland may be readily conceived and represented to a class of students, by taking a *red* pocket handkerchief, supposed to represent the capillary network (principal *vascular* structure of the gland), and a *white* one to represent the *secreting* structure of basement membrane and epithelial cell-covering, and attaching them together, back to back, so as to make but one sheet. If this sheet be folded up into a small space, so that the interior of the bundle should contain a larger number of minute *tubular* cavities (the white handkerchief always being supposed to form the inside of these tubes), such an arrangement might well be supposed to illustrate a *tubular* gland. If the little *cavities* left in the interior were *round* or *spheroidal*, it would represent a *saccular* gland.

357. For the purposes of description, *glands* may be classified, according to the arrangement of their *saccules* or their *tubules*, into three groups or varieties:—

(1.) The *simple tubule* or *tubular gland*, as the gastric and intestinal *tubuli* of the mucous membrane. (See fig. 64.)

(2.) The *aggregated glands*, frequently termed *conglomerate* or *racemose* glands, as the *salivary* glands, the *pancreas*, the *lachrymal*, and the *mammary* glands. (See fig. 64.)

(3.) The *convoluted tubular glands*, which consist of long and *tortuous tubules*, sometimes forming simple loops and sometimes terminating in *flask-like dilations*, as in the *tubuli uriniferi* of the kidneys. (See fig. 64).

358. The *secreting tubuli*, *follicles*, &c., are everywhere *closed* where they are in contact with the *capillaries* supplying them with the blood from which they derive materials of their secretion; but at their other extremities they open into the *ducts*.

359. Glandular Epithelium consists of the *nucleated epithelial* cells which line the follicles, tubuli, sacculi, and other secreting surfaces of glands. It differs from the *epithelium* of other regions chiefly in being *larger* and *rounder*, or more globular, also in being more juicy. (See fig. 22).

360. Glandular Ducts are the *tubular* passages or vessels, most frequently having a more or less branched or *arborescent* structure, by which the secretions are collected from the secreting tissue in the interior of the glands, and transmitted to the mouth of the gland or principal duct, there to be poured out as required.

By this arrangement of *ducts* a *large* surface of *secreting tissue* is enabled to be packed away in very small space.

361. The *larger ducts*, like the veins, consist of three coats or layers:—

(1.) An *outer* or peripheral layer of *connective* and elastic tissue, giving toughness, elasticity, and resistance to the walls of the tube.

(2.) A thin *middle* layer of organic or unstriped (involuntary) muscular fibre, which probably assists, when necessary, in propelling the secretion out of the gland.

(3.) An *internal* layer of more or less modified *mucous membrane*, comprising a layer of *basement* membrane and epithelial cells, more generally of the *columnar* variety.

The walls of the *larger* ducts are supplied with nerves and blood-vessels. The *minuter* ducts frequently possess but one coat, consisting of *basement membrane* and *epithelial cells.*

362. Vital Selective Force.—This term has sometimes been employed to designate the peculiar power by which the *glandular epithelial cells* select the specific materials they require from the common pabulum, the blood. They possess this power in common with the tissues, the *nutrition* of which depends on its exercise. Of the real nature of this power we really know little or nothing: the use of this term, therefore, in this case, probably does little more than conceal our ignorance.

363. Theory of the Process of Secretion.—The theory of the formation of the secretions in the glands proper, most generally adopted, attributes it to the *nutrition, growth,* and *development* of the glandular epithelium cells—thus regarding the whole process of *secretion* as a mere modification of that of *nutrition.*

The *gland cells* or their *nuclei* are thus supposed to develop and supply the secreted matter as a part of their own substance. The following is the order of succession of the process of development in which this is supposed to take place:—

(1.) The *gland cells* develop, grow, and attain maturity by appropriating to themselves nutriment derived from the *liquor sanguinis* of the adjacent blood-vessels.

(2.) They subsist for a very brief time in a state of maturity as perfect cells, containing nucleus, cell-wall, and *cell-contents.*

(3.) The *cell-walls* after a time *dissolve* or *burst,* discharging and yielding up their *cell-contents,* which form the proper material of the secretion.

364. The Liver is the *largest* gland in the body; it is incessantly in action, secreting *bile* and *glycogen,* and is therefore a *constant* source of *gain* and *loss* to the blood. (See figs. 2 and 59.)

It is the large *reddish-brown* organ situated at the right side of the top of the abdomen, immediately underneath the right belt of the diaphragm, to the concavity of which it is attached, its left lobe overlying a portion of the stomach.

The liver is usually described as being 3 to 5 ℔s in weight, and as *secreting* 3 to 5 ℔s of *bile* per day. It is 10 to 13 inches long, 6 to 7 inches broad, and about 3 inches at its greatest thickness.

365. Structure of the Liver.—The liver contains five *lobes* and five *fissures*, and is supported in its situation by five *ligaments*, chiefly folds in the *peritoneum*. The two chief lobes are the *right* and *left* lobes, the former being six times as large as the latter.

The liver is almost entirely enfolded by the *peritoneum*, which forms its *serous* coat; but besides this it has its own peculiar *fibrous coat* or tunic, which passes by the *portal canal* into the substance of the liver, with the blood-vessels and hepatic ducts investing them, and thus forming the sheath termed "*Glisson's Capsule.*"

366. The Lobes of the liver consist of an agglomeration or collection of *lobules.*

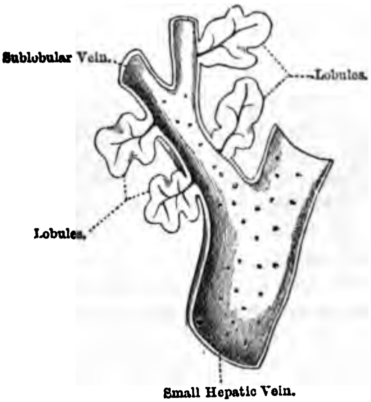


Fig. 65. Diagram of Lobules of Liver.

367. The Lobules are small, roundish or *granular* bodies, about $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{10}$ of an inch in diameter, or about the size of a pin's head or of a *millet* seed. They consist of masses or agglomerations of *biliary* or *hepatic* cells, which are clustered about the minute branches of the *portal* veins, which form the *interlobular* veins. (See fig. 65 and 67.)

368. The Biliary or Hepatic Cells are small, rounded or polygonal, yellowish, *nucleated* cells, varying from the $\frac{1}{800}$th to the $\frac{1}{1000}$th of an inch in diameter. These *cells,* which *secrete* the *bile,* are massed together in the *interstitial* network formed by the smaller branches of the *hepatic* and *portal* veins, and capillaries and *hepatic ducts,*—thus forming the *lobules,* which are further enclosed in very loose coverings of *connective tissue.*

369. The Biliary Ducts are the minute ducts or tubules by which the bile is collected from the cells, and ultimately conducted to the gall bladder or the intestines. Their mode of origin is still undetermined. Some writers regard them as commencing in the interior of the lobules, others as being purely *inter*-lobular—that is, as commencing *outside* and between the lobules they encircle. In any case, the small *biliary* ducts form an *inter*-lobular *plexus,* enclosing the lobules and *collecting* the bile secreted by them. The smaller *biliary* ducts ultimately unite to form the larger *cystic, hepatic,* and *common* bile ducts.

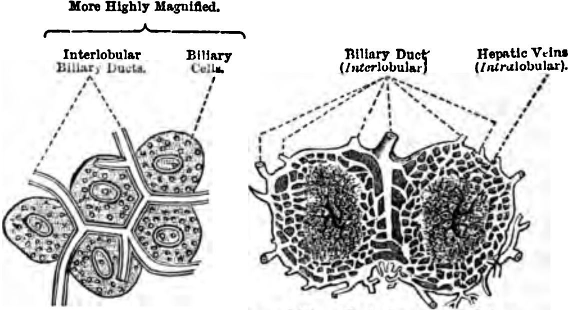

More Highly Magnified.
Interlobular Biliary Ducts.
Biliary Cells.
Biliary Duct (*Inter*lobular)
Hepatic Veins (*Intra*lobular).

Fig. 66. Transverse Section of Two Lobules of the Liver, showing distribution of Biliary Ducts and Biliary Cells.

370. The Cystic Duct, which is about an inch long, conveys the bile, secreted during the intervals when digestion is not proceeding, into the *gall bladder.*

371. The Hepatic Duct is formed by *two* trunks, which pass out of the right and left. lobes of the liver, and unite.

372. The Common Bile Duct (*ductus communis choledochus*), which is about the diameter of an ordinary goose quill, and about three inches long, is the largest of the bile ducts. It is formed by the junction of the *cystic* and *hepatic* ducts, and passes *obliquely* on its termination between the *muscular* and *mucous* coats of the duodenum, entering that organ, with the *common* opening of the *pancreatic duct*, at about its middle. The perforated *walls* of the duodenum thus act as a valve, permitting or obstructing the flow of the bile as the *duodenum* is *full* or *empty.* When the duodenum is *active*, and its walls well charged with blood, they are pushed out, the canal becomes relieved, and the *bile* readily forces its way through the distended aperture; but when it is empty and inactive, its walls *collapse*, and the sides of the *duct* become folded together, and the passage thus stopped. These *ducts* consist of an *external* fibrous and an *internal* mucous coat.

373. The Gall Bladder is the *pear-shaped*, conical, membranous bag, which is seated in a cavity under the *right* lobe of the liver. It is about 4 inches long, and 1 inch in its greatest diameter, and holds 8 to 10 drachms of bile. It consists of an outer *serous*, a middle *muscular*, and an inner *mucous* coat. Its function is to serve as a *reservoir* for the bile, during the *intervals* between digestion, when the aid of the bile is not required. (See figs. 58 and 61.)

374. The Portal Vein, which carries and distributes to the liver the blood laden with the *products of digestion* absorbed through the walls of the veins of the stomach and intestines, is formed by the *union* of the veins from the stomach, intestines, pancreas, and spleen. The *portal vein* passes into the liver through the transverse or *portal fissure,* and then subdividing, after the *manner of an artery,* sends out minute branches, which, passing along the *portal canals,* ultimately encircle the lobules, thus becoming *inter*lobular veins, and then give off minute capillaries, the *portal capillaries,* which, passing into the substance of the lobules—that is, between the walls of the *biliary cells*—supply them with the blood from which the *bile* is *secreted.*

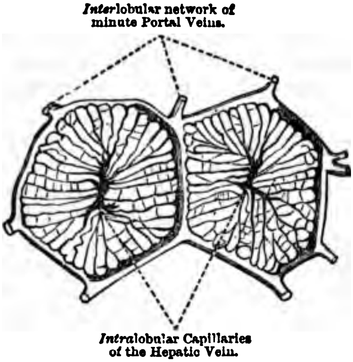

*Inter*lobular network of minute Portal Veins.
*Intra*lobular Capillaries of the Hepatic Vein.

Fig. 67. Transverse Section of Two Lobules of the Liver, showing minute branches of the Portal Veins (Interlobular), encircling Biliary Lobules.

375. The Hepatic Veins are the veins by which the *used-up* portal and arterial blood of the liver—that is, the blood supplied to the liver for the *formation of bile,* and also that supplied to *nourish* and *vivify* the liver itself—is collected and poured into the *vena cava.* The *minute* hepatic veins or capillaries commence in the centres of the lobules, thus forming the *intra*-lobular vessels.

376. The Hepatic Artery is one of the branches of the *cœliac axis.* It supplies the blood which nourishes the membranes, the coats of the large vessels, and the ducts of the liver.

377. The Bile is a yellow, or greenish-yellow, viscid, extremely bitter, slightly odorous and slightly *alkaline* fluid. It is a little heavier than water, its sp. gr. being about 1020. Its chief *function* is apparently to aid the digestion of *fatty* matters, by *neutralizing* the *acid* of the gastric juice and converting the fat into an *emulsion.*

The *bile* consists of *water, mucus,* and from 10 to 17 per cent. of *solid* matter.

The *solid* matter consists chiefly of *bilin;* but it also contains fat, *cholesterine,* and salts.

The *bilin* is a *resinous* substance, composed of *glycocholic* and *taurocholic* acids, in combination with *soda.*

The *bile* consists of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulphur; the carbon and hydrogen being in great *excess,* as compared with that of the blood; the nitrogen of the bile being, on the contrary, greatly *deficient,* as compared with that of the blood.

The secretion of the bile may thus be regarded as an *excrementitious* process in relation to the elements *carbon* and *hydrogen;* also as a *digestive* process in relation to *fatty* substances.

378. **Glycogen** (Gr. *glukus,* sweet; *gennao,* I produce) is a peculiar whitish, tasteless, soluble amyloid substance, possessing properties intermediate to those of *hydrated starch* and *dextrin,* which is *formed* in the liver. It is distinguished by its strong tendency to change into sugar in the presence of any animal *ferment.* This substance may be readily detected in the blood of the *hepatic vein,* and in the *ascending vena cava,* just before it enters the heart; but it cannot be detected in blood which has passed through the lungs. Evidently, therefore, it has disappeared by combustion or oxidation, —thus playing the part of respiratory fuel, or heat food

379. **Proof of the Glycogenic Function of the Liver.**— If blood be drawn from the *hepatic artery* or the *portal vein*—that is, *before* or *as* it *enters* the liver—no *glycogen* can be detected in it. But if blood be drawn from the hepatic *veins*—that is, as it *leaves* the liver—*glycogen* may be detected in abundance; thus proving its formation in the liver itself. Further, if the liver be repeatedly

washed out by the frequent injection of water into its vessels until all traces of *glycogen* disappear, after allowing the liver to remain at rest for some time, *glycogen* will again manifest itself in its substances.

380. **Glucose**, or liver sugar, is the saccharine substance formed by the action of animal ferments on the glycogen. It disappears from the blood after it has passed through the lungs.

381. **The Nerves of the Liver** consist of branches of the *sympathetic*, the *pneumogastric*, and the right *phrenic* nerves.

382. **The Pancreas**, or sweetbread, is the long, soft, hammer or tongue-shaped, milky-white gland which lies under the back of the stomach, extending from the spleen to the duodenum (see fig. 59). Its *tail*, or smaller end, is in contact with the spleen; its larger end, or *head*, lies in the bend or concavity of the duodenum. It is six to seven inches long, and weighs three to five ounces, and probably secretes about half a pint of *pancreatic juice* per day.

In its minute structure, it closely resembles the salivary glands, being a *racemose* gland, and consisting of acini, lobules, and lobes, separated by *septa* of connective tissue.

The *pancreas* has been termed the abdominal salivary gland.

383. **The Main Pancreatic Duct** commences at the *tail*, and, passing the entire length of the gland, receiving numerous smaller tributary ducts, emerges about the size of a crow-quill from the *head* of the gland, and enters the *duodenum* along with the *common bile duct*. It enters the walls of the duodenum very *slantingly;* so that any pressure in the duodenum *closes* the duct by pressing its walls together, and thus prevents any substance from passing backward from the *duodenum* into it.

384. **The Pancreatic Juice** is a colourless, nearly tasteless, slightly viscid, *alkaline* fluid, in general appearance and properties very similar to the saliva. It acts powerfully on *starchy* substances, and aids the

digestion of the *fats*, and is now supposed to act on the *proteids*, converting them into *peptones*.

385. The Salivary Glands.—The minute structure of the salivary glands consists of minute roundish or oval *sacs* or *vesicles* (acini), about $\frac{1}{200}$ of an inch in diameter, clustered into grape-like bunches or lobules (see fig. 68). These rounded *microscopic sacs*, which consist of an outer wall of fine *basement* membrane, lined on its interior by a layer of *epithelial cells*, open out into minute ducts, which unite together to form larger ones—the *salivary ducts*—by which the *saliva* is discharged into the mouth (see 303). The grape-like vesicles are surrounded by a *network* of minute capillaries. The *lobules*, held together by the ducts, blood-vessels, and *matrix* of connective tissue, form numerous *lobes*, each end of which is more or less enclosed by its own membrane. They are termed *racemose* glands (from Lat. *racemus*, a bunch of grapes). (See section 357.)

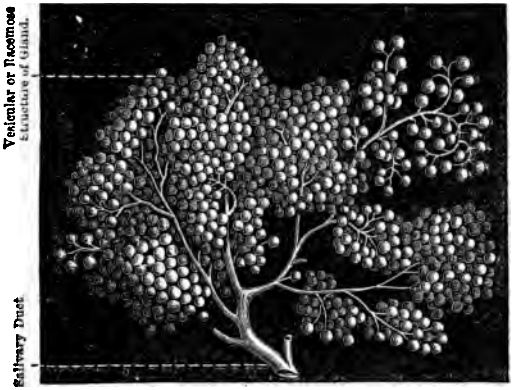


Fig. 68. Showing Minute Structure of Salivary (Parotid) Glands.

CHAPTER XIV.

EXCRETION—THE SKIN.

386. The Skin, or outer integument (Lat. *tego,* I cover) of the body, is the somewhat complex organ, both in structure and function, which *invests* and surrounds the exterior of the body. It, with some modification of structure, passes as *mucous* membrane by the mouth into, and lines the interior of the *alimentary canal* which passes through the trunk.

387. Functions of the Skin.—The chief functions of the skin are the following:—

(1.) It *regulates* the *temperature* of the body, or the *animal heat.*

(2.) It *protects* from air, dirt, and injury, and binds together the superficial organs of the body.

(3.) It is an organ of *excretion* and *absorption.*

(4.) It is an organ of *sensation* or *touch.*

(5.) It is an organ of *respiration,* it absorbs *oxygen,* and evolves *carbonic acid.* (This perhaps is properly included under 3.)

388. Structure of the Skin.—The skin consists essentially of *two* distinct layers or formations, viz.:—(1) the cuticle; and (2) the cutis.

389. (1.) **The Cuticle** is the outer *non-vascular* layer of *epithelial cells* which lines and protects the cutis. It is variously called the *cortical layer* of the skin, the *epidermis* or the *scarf skin.* The *inner* or lowermost layer of the epithelial cells, of which it is composed, is moulded on to the true skin or dermis. The cells of this, the softer and lowermost layer, are more round and moist than those of the outer layer; and, in the case of the negro and other coloured races, contain dark *pigment* or colouring matter. This *layer* is sometimes called the *mucous layer* of the cuticle, or the *rete mucosum.*

The *cuticle* is the layer of the skin which is raised up from the lower one by the collection of clear fluid, when a blister is formed. It is quite devoid of sensibility when pricked.

390. (2.) The **Cutis**, variously termed the *dermis*, *corium*, *cutis vera* or *true skin*, forms the more important and complex lower or under layer of the skin. It consists of—

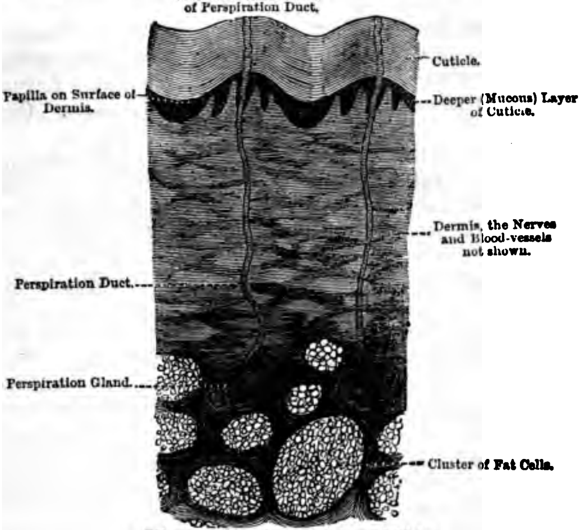

Corkscrew termination of Perspiration Duct.
Cuticle.
Papilla on Surface of Dermis.
Deeper (Mucous) Layer of Cuticle.
Dermis, the Nerves and Blood-vessels not shown.
Perspiration Duct.
Perspiration Gland.
Cluster of Fat Cells.

Fig. 69. Vertical Section of Skin.

(*a*) A fibrous network or matrix of connective tissue.

(*b*) A network of blood-vessels (capillaries) ramifying in the meshes of the former.

(*c*) A network of nervous fibrils, also ramifying through the same.

(*d*) *Sudoriparous* and *sebaceous glands* and ducts, and masses of adipose tissue (fat cells), enclosed within the fibrous matrix.

The *fibrous matrix*, when tanned, forms leather, and when boiled, yields *gelatine* (jelly). The closeness of the nervous fibrils and of the capillary blood-vessels is shown by the fact, that nowhere in the substance of the true skin can the point of a needle be inserted without causing *bleeding* and *pain.*

391. **Sudoriparous Glands** (Lat. *sudo,* I sweat).—The sweat, perspiration, or sudoriparous glands which *excrete* the perspiration, consist of minute *coiled tubules,* formed of *basement membrane,* lined with *epithelial* cells. (See fig. 69.)

The inner or lower terminations of these *tubules* are *coiled* into minute *globular* masses; the remaining portions of these tubules pass to the surface of the skin—at first forming straight, and then, as they enter the *epidermis, spiral* or cork-screw shaped *tubules* the mouths of which constitute the *pores* of the skin. Dr. Erasmus Wilson estimated the number of pores on the surface of the body to amount to 7,000,000, and the length of tubing they contain to be about 28 miles. This estimate is, however, probably greatly exaggerated. Krause estimates their number at about 2,500,000.

These glands *excrete* the *perspiration,* which usually passes off as invisible *vapour,* carrying off the excess of heat in the form of what is termed *latent heat,* and thus *regulating* the temperature of the blood. Thus a *live* ox might remain in a hot oven comparatively unharmed, while a *dead* one would be roasted. The natural temperature of the blood is 98° Fahr. The temperature never rises more than one or two degrees above this, except in the case of *fever.* When the temperature of the blood rises *seven* or *eight* degrees above this point, life is endangered; and if it continue long at this high temperature, it will necessarily prove fatal.

392. **The Cutaneous Perspiration,** or the sweat, consists, when condensed, of a colourless, transparent, slightly *acid* liquid, having a peculiar and characteristic odour. It contains carbonic acid, *urea,* and lactic acid, also traces of formic, acetic, and butyric acids. It also usually contains small quantities of *sebaceous* matter

and of *epithelial cells*, which render it more or less turbid. It is constantly given off from the skin in the form of *invisible vapour*, or, as it is termed, *insensible* perspiration. But when its escape is prevented, or when it is given off very rapidly—as during great exertion, during violent mental emotion, or when the body is heavily clothed—it collects in the skin in the form of a *liquid*, and is then termed *sensible* perspiration.

393. The *quantity* of the perspiration excreted by the skin varies very greatly with the exertion, temperature, &c. It is in general estimated that the quantity of *carbonic acid* daily excreted by the skin amounts to from $\frac{1}{40}$ to $\frac{1}{30}$ of that thrown off by the lungs; also, that the quantity of *watery vapour* daily eliminated by the skin amounts to *twice* that thrown off by the *lungs*.

Professor Huxley speaks of the relation of the skin to the blood, in this respect, as similar to that of a bladder full of hot fluid to its contents.

Sequin, a French chemist, attempted to estimate the daily loss, through the medium of the skin, by enveloping himself bodily in an air-tight oiled-silk bag, which was adjusted to and gummed to his lips, so that the entire *exhalation* of the skin might be retained within the bag. He found, as the result of several careful experiments, that, during a state of rest, about eleven grains per minute were transpired by the skin.

Valentine estimates the average cutaneous exhalation (including carbonic acid and aqueous vapour) at $1\frac{5}{7}$ lb. daily.

Dr. Sutherland Smith ascertained by actual experiments, made at the Phœnix Gas Works, that a man working in an atmosphere of very high temperature lost upwards of 5 lbs. in seventy minutes.

Professor Huxley gives the following as the average amount of the cutaneous excretions per diem:—Water, 18 ounces, or 10,000 grains; solid matter, 300 grains; carbonic acid, 400 grains.

The skin is intermediate in its function to that of the *lungs* and the *kidneys*. It, like the lungs, *respires*—

that is, absorbs oxygen and excretes carbonic acid; but it also, like the kidneys, excretes *urea*. The skin is more active in *hot*, the kidneys in *cold* weather. When the kidneys, from disease or injury, are unable fully to perform their function, as in the disease termed *ischuria*, the skin to a great extent temporarily undertakes the duty of excreting the *urea* from the blood, the perspiration strongly acquiring the odour of the urine.

394. The *Urine* consists of a watery solution, containing in round numbers about 96 per cent. of water, 1½ per cent. of *urea*, ½ per cent. of *uric* acid, along with mucus and colouring matter, and with salts of potash, soda, lime, &c.

395. **The Sebaceous Glands** (Lat. *sebum*, suet) consist of minute *sacculated bags* or *follicles* of *basement membrane*, lined with *epithelium*, and containing more or less of the *fatty* matter they *secrete*. They are most numerous about the *hair follicles*, which are usually supplied with a pair of glands, and in the substance of those parts of the skin which undergo much flexion. Their function is apparently to keep the skin soft and flexible. They are very active in the skin of the negro and of natives of hot climates. The peculiar odour of the skin of the negro is due to the activity of these glands.

396. **Absorption by the Skin.**—The skin possesses the power of absorbing fluid and gaseous substances. Shipwrecked sailors sometimes attempt, in the absence of fresh water, to relieve their thirst by bathing in the sea and by wetting their clothes with sea-water.

397. **The Papillæ of the Skin** consist of little conical processes on the surface of the *cutis* or true skin, immediately below the epidermis. Their extremities are sometimes simple, sometimes divided (see fig. 69). They are most abundant on the fingers, the palms of the hands, and the soles of the feet. The central portion of each papilla contains a minute *plexus* of blood-vessels, comprising an *arterial* and *venous* loop, also a *nerve fibril*, though the latter is occasionally absent,

On many of the more sensitive parts of the skin, as the lips and the palm of the hands, the papillæ are supplied with *touch corpuscles.* (See fig. 70.)

The papillæ are about $\frac{1}{100}$ of an inch long, and $\frac{1}{250}$ of an inch in diameter at the base.

398. A Tactile Corpuscle is a minute, hard, oval-shaped body, very similar to a *Pacinian corpuscle,* which frequently occupies the central part of the *papilla.* The *Pacinian corpuscles* are attached to the *nerve fibrils* which pass up the *centres* of the *papillæ,* and wind *spirally* round the side of the corpuscle. They probably increase the *sensibility* of the papillæ by increasing their resistance, and thus causing greater pressure on their *nerve-fibrils.*

399. Compass Test of Sensibility.—The *sensibility* of the various parts of the skin, the epidermal covering being of equal thickness, is in general proportionate to the supply of *nervous fibrils* to these parts, and to the *activity* of their *circulation.* Cold, the tying of a ligature round the organ, or anything which diminishes its circulation, lessens its sensitiveness.

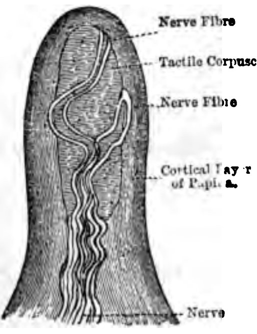


Fig. 70.—Papilla of Skin of hand freed from Cuticle to show Tactile Corpuscle.

400. A pair of drawing compasses, with their points slightly blunted, forms an excellent test (Weber's method) of the *relative sensibility* of the surface of the skin at different parts of the body, the *sensibility* of that part being greatest at which the two points of the compasses can be separately distinguished from each other when placed nearest together. The following Table shows the *relative sensibility* of different parts of the skin, as determined by this method ;—

TABLE SHOWING SENSIBILITY OF VARIOUS PARTS OF SKIN BY COMPASS-TEST.

Point of Tongue, -	½ line	Palm of Hand, -	5 lines
Tip of Finger, -	1 ,,	Forehead, - -	10 ,,
Red Surface of Lips,	2 lines	Back of Hand, -	14 ,,
Tip of Nose, -	3 ,,	,, Thigh, -	30 ,,

The distances given in the above Table are the shortest distances at which the two compass points give *two* distinct impressions; between these distances the two points give the impression of but one. The student should repeat these observations on himself.

CHAPTER XV.

THE KIDNEYS AND URINARY ORGANS.

401. **The Chief Urinary Organs** are the kidneys, ureters,

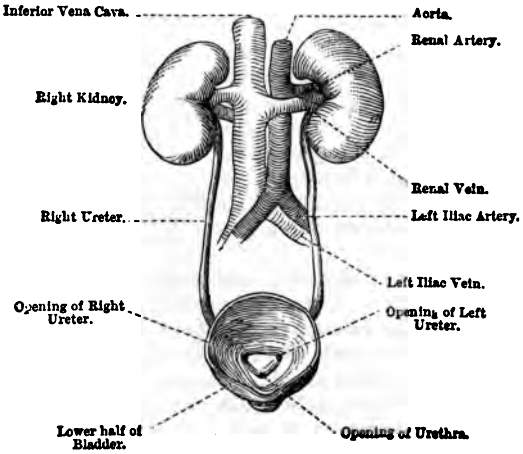


Fig. 71. Showing the Kidneys and their Blood-vessels, the Bladder and Ureters.

and the bladders, by which the urine is *excreted*, *conveyed* to the bladder, and *stored* up until its accumulation produces a sensation of uneasiness which ultimately leads to its expulsion. (See fig. 71.)

402. The Kidneys are the two bent, oval-shaped, dark-reddish organs situated outside the *peritoneum*, at the back of the abdominal cavity, one on each side of the spinal column, opposite the junction of the *dorsal* and *lumbar* vertebræ.

The bent or internal borders of the kidneys, which are turned a little backwards and towards the spine, contain openings termed *hiluses*, which give *entrance* to the *renal* arteries and nerves, and *exit* to the *renal* veins and *ducts*.

The human kidney very closely resembles that of the sheep, with which we are all familiar, but is a little larger, measuring about 4 inches long, 2 inches wide, and 1 inch thick. Each kidney is surrounded and protected by a large mass of loose *connective* tissue and fat—as seen in a loin of sheep at the butchers.

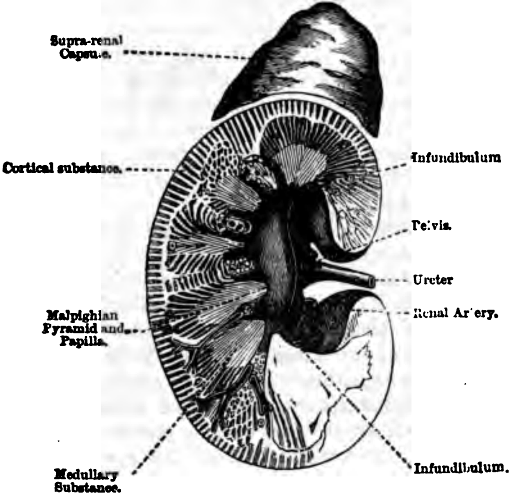


Fig. 72. Longitudinal Section of Human Kidney and Suprarenal Capsule.

403. Cut a sheep's kidney through the middle, *longitudinally*, from its *convex* to its *concave* border, with a very sharp knife, and the following structures, passing from without, inwards, will be observable:—

(1.) An *external* thin membranous covering of connective tissue —the *capsule*—which passes in at the *hilus* and lines its interior *sinus* or cavity.

(2.) A darker, somewhat spotted, friable layer, about one-fifth of an inch thick, termed the *cortical* substance, which forms about three-fourths of the substance of the gland.

(3.) A *fibrous* striated-looking structure, termed the *medullary* substance, the larger portion of which is collected into the form of pyramids (the Malpighian pyramids), the summits of which, termed *papillæ* or *mamillæ*, protrude into the *sinus* or cavity of the kidney.

(4.) A hollow cavity or *sinus* (dividing into a central and *two* terminal funnel-shaped portions, termed *infundibula*) which opens by the *pelvis* into the *ureter*. This cavity is lined by the *capsular* membrane. Those portions of the membrane which line the papillæ are termed the *calyces*.

404. The Medullary Substance of the kidney consists of *straight tubules* of transparent *basement* membrane, varying from $\frac{1}{600}$ to $\frac{1}{200}$ of an inch in diameter, *lined* internally with *spheroidal* or glandular *epithelial cells*. Each *tubule* is surrounded by a minute *plexus* of veins, from which it derives the *urea* secreted by the *glandular epithelium*. About 1,000 of these *tubuli uriniferi* open and discharge their excretion (urine) into the sinus from the end of each pyramid.

405. The Cortical Substance of the kidneys consist chiefly of the *Malpighian capsules*, and their contained *glomeruli* or arterial tufts of the *convoluted* and *tortuous* continuations of the *straight tubuli uriniferi*.

The ends of the *straight tubules* first become *convoluted*, and then terminate into flask-like *dilatations*, the Malpighian capsules. Into this *capsule* an artery, termed the *afferent* artery, *enters* and coils or *loops* up into a little ball or tuft, termed a *glomerulus*, *pushing* before it the membranous end of the capsule, so that the membrane completely invests the arterial tuft; the other end of the coiled blood-vessel leaves or passes out of the capsule as the *efferent vein* (see fig. 73). Professor Huxley compares this with the ordinary filtering arrangement of the chemist—the wall of the capsule representing the funnel, the walls of the arterial tuft the filtering paper, and the blood in its interior the liquid to be filtered—a portion of which, as it were, filters through into the tubule.

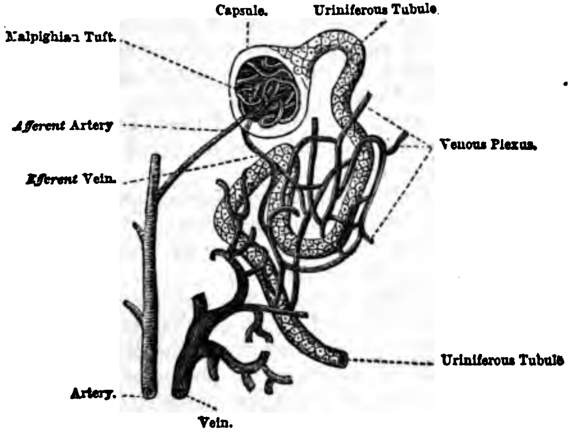


Fig. 73. Plan of Circulation in Kidney.

406. Circulation of the Blood in the Kidneys.—Fig. 73 shows the minute circulation in the kidneys. The arterial blood enters the kidneys by the *renal arteries*, which, after dividing and subdividing, ultimately distribute it to the *afferent* arteries of the various *glomeruli* or arterial tufts. The blood leaves each *tuft* by the *efferent* veins, which *first* form the *venous plexuses* (resembling in miniature those of the *portal* circulation of the liver) that surround the *uriniferous tubules* and supply them with the blood from which the *urea* is secreted, and *then* unite to form the *radicles* of the *renal veins.*

The *urea* and *uric acid* are most probably secreted by the *glandular epithelium* of the *tubuli uriniferi*. The *watery* portion of the urine is probably supplied from the *external tuft* in the *Malpighian capsule*, the membrane of which is apparently lined only with thin *squamous epithelium*. *Possibly* some of that portion of the membrane lining the *outside* of the *tuft* has no *epithelial* covering.

407. **The Purest Blood** in the body is that passed from the kidneys by the renal veins, the urine excreted having removed not only most of its *nitrogenous waste* matter, but probably as much carbonic acid as it could have acquired during its short journey from the lungs. Therefore the blood will now contain its *minimum* quantity both of *carbonic acid* and *urea*; in other words, it will consist of the *aortic* blood deprived of most of its *nitrogenous waste matter*.

Irritation of the *renal nerves* immediately stops the excretion of urine, and changes the bright-red *renal* venous blood to the *dark* colour of *ordinary* venous blood. (See *Vaso-motor Nerves*.)

408. **The Ureters** are the *two excretory* ducts, about 16 or 18 inches long, and about the diameter of a goose-quill, which convey the urine from the kidneys to the bladder. They enter the outer posterior walls of the bladder very obliquely, passing between its coats for about an inch, so that it is much easier for a substance to find its way *into* than *out of* the bladder by these ducts. They enter the inner wall of the bladder side by side, as shown in the diagram (fig. 71). Their walls, like that of the bladder, contain three coats.

409. **The Bladder**, which is placed in the *pelvis*, and serves as a *reservoir* to retain the continuously secreted urine, consists when distended, of an oval-shaped *sac* or bag, about 5 inches long and 3 inches wide, and is capable of holding a pint and upwards of fluid. It, like the ureter, consists of three coats—viz., an outer fibrous coat, a *middle* muscular, and an *inner* mucous coat.

The neck of the bladder is furnished with a *sphincter* muscle, by whose contraction the external *passage from* the bladder (the urethra) is closed.

Ordinarily the muscular wall of the bladder keeps it in a state of permanent contraction, which gradually yields to the pressure of the contained urine as it gradually increases in quantity. Ultimately, when it has collected in such quantity as to give rise to a certain sensation of uneasiness, the sphincter muscle, usually with the assent of the will, relaxes, and the muscular walls, now contracting more violently, expel the contained liquid through the *external* passage (the *urethra*).

410. The Urine is the (when healthy) clear, pale-yellow coloured, acid, fermentible liquid secreted by the kidneys. It contains the chief *nitrogenous* waste of the system. One thousand parts of it contain about 965 of *water*, 14 of *urea*, ·4 of *uric acid*, 10 of extractive colouring matter, &c., about 10 of salts (chiefly sodium, calcium, and magnesium phosphates and sulphates), and common salt (sodium chloride).

The *urine* also contains a small quantity of *carbonic* acid, and still smaller quantities of *nitrogen* and *oxygen*. The urine thus contains the elements of the blood and tissues in a condition of disintegration.

The average quantity of urine excreted per day by a healthy man is about 50 ounces, or about 24,000 grains, containing about 500 grains of *urea*, about 10 to 12 grains of *uric acid* and about the same quantity of *hippuric* acid. The quantity and composition of the urine excreted per day, however, varies considerably with health, age, temperature, work performed, &c. The *nitrogenous* and *phosphoric* waste is increased very greatly by *hard* study or brain work.

Urea, the principal *nitrogenous* and organic constitutent of urine, is not *formed*, but simply *separated* from the blood by the *kidneys*. It is, when pure, a *colourless*, *transparent*, *soluble*, crystallizable (in needles), *neutral* substance, having the chemical formula $CH_4\ N_2O$. It is the product of the *oxidation* of the *nitrogenous* portion of the tissues. It decomposes into *carbonate of ammonia*, which explains the strongly *ammoniacal* odour of badly kept urinals.

CHAPTER XVI.

DUCTLESS GLANDS.

411. The Chief Ductless Glands are the *spleen*, the *suprarenal capsules*, and the *thymus* and *thyroid* glands. They bear a certain resemblance to the *glands* proper in their internal structure which consists largely of *cells* or *vesicles*, and in their great *vascularity;* but they differ from them in *not* containing *excretory ducts.* They are *supposed* to contribute to the formation of the *colourless corpuscles* of the blood, which probably originate to a great extent in the solid substance of the ductless glands. Their actual function is really unknown.

The Thymus Gland, which is situated at the base of the *heart*, behind the *sternum*, gradually disappears about middle life.

The Thyroid Gland is situated in front of the throat, just below and on each side of the *larynx.* It is the seat of the disease known as "*Derbyshire neck,*" or *goitre*, so common in some parts of Derbyshire, and in Switzerland.

The Suprarenal Capsules are two small, triangular, or cocked-hat-shaped bodies, which rest on the top of the kidneys.

412. The Spleen, or milt, is the very distensible, flattened, oval, dark reddish body, whose slightly concave inner surface lies upon the left side of the stomach. It consists of a dark-reddish, friable, spongy substance, called the *splenic pulp*, held together by a network of trabeculæ (bars), and studded with a great number of whitish spheroidal *bodies*, termed the *splenic* (Malpighian) *corpuscles.* It becomes very much larger about six hours after a meal. It has been cut out of dogs apparently without any disadvantage to the animals. The blood which leaves the *spleen* by the *splenic vein* contains relatively more *colourless corpuscles* and *fibrin*, but fewer *red* ones than are contained in the *blood* brought to it by the splenic *artery* before it has passed through this organ.

The *spleen* probably acts as a *reservoir* for the extra supply of blood required during digestion, also as one of the sources of the *white corpuscles* of the blood.

CHAPTER XVII.

ANIMAL MECHANICS—THE MUSCLES, TENDONS, JOINTS, LIGAMENTS, AND LEVERS.

413. Animal Mechanics is that branch of Physiology which treats of the various movements of the animal body, or of motion and locomotion, and of the contrivances by which they are effected and the mode in which they are used. The muscles are the chief *active* agents of motion; the bones, ligaments, joints, and tendons are the *passive* agents.

A very fine delicate *microscopic* movement, which takes place over a considerable area of *membranous* surface in the interior of the body, is effected by means of *cilia*. The origin of this movement, which is effected by the *cilia* bending alternately *backward* and *forward* at their *base*, and which is entirely independent of the nervous system, is not understood.

414. The Muscles, which consist of red fleshy masses of *contractile* fibre, comprise *two* kinds, viz.:—(1.) *Hollow muscles,* which enclose cavities, and the contraction and extension of which alternately contract and expand these cavities, as explained in the case of the heart and the *alimentary canal;* (2.) *Solid muscles* which are for the most part attached to *bony levers.* *Hollow muscles* consist of *unstriped* or *smooth* muscular fibre; *solid muscles* consist of *striated* muscular fibre. (See secs. 142, 143). When a muscle *contracts,* its thickness *increases* in the same degree that its length decreases, so that it does not alter in actual *bulk.*

415. The Solid Muscles usually consist of masses of *contractile* fibre which are arranged, one end of the muscle being attached to a bony *lever* (that is, of a movable bone) the other end of the muscle being attached to a second (*fixed*) bone, a *joint* intervening between the ends of the two bones, so that when the muscle *contracts, one* of the bones is *moved* towards the other.

Such muscles usually possess a *belly,* or fuller and thicker, more or less *convex* mass in the middle, and two smaller *extremities* terminating in *tendon*, termed respectively the *origin* and *insertion* of the muscle.

The *end* of the muscle attached to the fixed bone is termed its *origin;* the *end* attached to the movable bone is termed the *insertion* of the muscle.

416. Sphincter and Orbicular Muscles.—In some cases the muscular fibre is arranged in *circular bands* or rings, as at the termination of the rectum, in the pylorus, or at the entrance to the bladder. In such cases, the *contraction* of the muscular ring or *sphincter* closes a central aperture, while its *relaxation* allows the same to open. The *iris*, the *orbicularis oris* which surrounds and closes the mouth, the *orbicularis palpebrarum* which surrounds the circumference of the orbits and eyelids, and *closes* the eyes, are of this type.

417. Nomenclature of Muscles.—Muscles usually take their names from their *function*, their *shape*, or their *position: abductors* draw parts *from* each other, *adductors to* each other; *levator muscles raise* or *draw upward; flexors* bend the limbs; *extensors* straighten them by their contraction, and are examples of the *first* class. The deltoid, denticulated, rhomboidal, serratus, square, triangular, and oblique muscles are examples of the *second* class. The abdominal, brachial, cervical, crural, dorsal, facial, pectoral, pelvic, and thoracic muscles are illustrations of the *third* class of muscles. Still, another class of muscles exist, which are named according to the number of *heads* or parts into which they divide, as the *biceps* and *triceps* of the arm.

418. Tendons or Sinews (from Lat. *tendo*, I stretch) consist of the tough, flexible, but inelastic whitish *cords* or bands of *fibrous* tissue by which the muscles are attached to the bones, as the *tendo Achillis*, by which the *gastrocnemius* muscle (muscle of the calf of the leg) is attached to the *os calcis*. A good illustration of a *tendon* is presented in the yellowish-white cord in the leg of a fowl, which, as most boys know when pulled, draws up or closes the foot and claws.

The *tendons* play the same part to the bones that the harness plays to the carriage. When the muscles contract they pull the tendons which pull the bones, just as when the horses pull the harness, the harness pulls the carriage.

419. Ligaments.—See sec. 87.

420. The Articular Cartilages consist of the thin layers of true cartilage which tip the *surfaces* of the ends of the movable bones. Its *smoothness* lessens *friction*, its *elasticity* lessens the concussion of the bones.

421. The Synovial Sacs (from Gr. *sun*, with; and *ōon*, an egg) are kinds of *sacs* or bags which line the cartilages of the joints—thus forming a *double* layer of membrane, one layer adhering to one bone, the other to the other bone, as usual with the *serous* membranes, the interior of the sac, where the two substances rub together, being *lubricated* by a transparent *yellowish-white*, or reddish, glairy, viscid fluid secretion, in appearance resembling the white of an egg, termed the *synovia*.

The passages through which the *tendons* glide are also lined by *synovial* sacs or *bursæ*.

422. A Joint or Articulation consists of the union of two or more bones. Movable joints consist of *perfect* and *imperfect* joints.

(1.) The *imperfect* joints are such as those of the *vertebræ* of the spine, which have no smooth linings of cartilage, and no synovial sacs, and which possess but very limited degrees of motion.

(2.) In the perfect joints the *ends* of the movable bones, at the surfaces of the joints, are tipped with *cartilage*, lined by *synovial sacs*, and *lubricated* with *synovia* in order to prevent friction. They are held together by means of *ligaments*.

The principal joints of this class are the *ball and socket*, the *hinge* and the *pivot* joints.

423. The Ball and Socket Joints consist, like those of the arm and thigh, and of rounded *heads*, fitting into rounded *cavities* or *sockets*. They admit of very considerable motion in almost every direction, allowing the arms and legs to be *rotated* so as to describe a cone round an imaginary axis. This movement is termed *circuminduction.* When the socket is *shallow,* like the *glenoid cavity* of the shoulder, there is great freedom of motion; but the bones are easily dislocated.

When the socket is deep, like the *acetabulum* of the pelvis, there is much less freedom of motion, but also *less chance of dislocation.*

424. **The Hinge Joints,** so called from their resemblance in plan of structure to a *common hinge,* only permit two motions—a *backward* and a *forward* motion in *one plane. Hinge* joints are single and double.

The *elbow* is a *single hinge* joint; the lower end of the *humerus* presents a nearly cylindrical head, which fits into a corresponding cavity in the *ulna.* The knee and the ankle are examples of less perfect single hinge joints.

425. In *double-hinge* or saddle-shaped joints, the end of *each* bone is *convex* from side to side in one direction, and *concave* from side to side in a direction at *right* angles to the convexity. They bear a certain limited resemblance to a *saddle* whose upper surface is *concave* from front to back, and *convex* from side to side. "A man seated in a saddle" is "articulated" with the saddle by such a joint. The *metacarpal* bone of the *thumb* is articulated to the *trapezium* (one of the carpal bones) by a *double-hinge* joint.

The joints of the *phalanges* of the hand and foot are essentially *hinge* joints.

426. **Pivot Joints** are formed by projections, processes, or pivots, on one bone, on to which, by a suitable ring or fitting, a second bone *fits* and *turns,* or in which the first bone *turns* on its *own axis.* Such joints permit of partial *rotation.* It is evident the *rotation* could not be *complete* without causing the laceration and destruction of the neighbouring nerves and blood-vessels.

427. The principal *pivot* joint in the body is that formed by the *odontoid process* of the *axis,* and the *anterior arch* and *transverse process* of the *atlas.* The former is a vertical *peg,* which fits into a ring formed by the two latter, the *ring* of the *atlas* rotating.

[illegible]28. *A second* less perfect kind of *pivot joint* is presented in the junction of the *radius* and the upper part of the *ulna*. The head of the radius, which is cylindrical, *rotates* within a *ring* formed partly by a depression in the ulna, but chiefly by the *orbicular ligament*. The two chief movements performed by this joint are those of *supination* and *pronation*.

429. Supination (from Lat. *supinus*, lying on the back) consists in turning the *back* of the hand *downwards*. Rest the *elbow* on the table and examine this movement, and it will be seen that the *ulna* (elbow) takes no part in the movement, but that it is entirely effected by the movement of the *radius* and the *ulna* by means of the *pivot* joint referred to. In supination the *radius* and *ulna* are made parallel with each other.

430. Pronation (from Lat. *pronus*, bending forward) is the movement by which the palm of the hand is turned *downwards*. In the act of *pronation* the *radius* is moved *obliquely* over the *ulna*.

431. A Lever is usually defined as a rigid or inflexible rod or bar, movable on or about a certain *fixed* or *relatively fixed* point of *rest*, prop, or support, termed the *fulcrum*. The force by which the lever is moved is termed the *power;* the resistance to be overcome is termed the *weight* or *resistance*.

Levers are divided into *three classes* or orders, according to the position of the points on the bar or lever to which the *power* or the *weight* are applied in relation to the *fulcrum*. The rods in all the three classes of levers may be either *straight* or *curved*.

432. In Levers of the First Kind the *fulcrum* is placed *between* the power and the weight, which are therefore placed on *opposite* sides of the *fulcrum*. The beam of an ordinary balance (pair of scales), a *pump handle*, the arms and blades of a pair of scissors, are so many familiar illustrations of this order of lever. The following are examples of this kind of lever in the human body:—

1. The head rocking backward and forward on the *atlas* (its fulcrum), the *trapezium* muscle, attached behind to the occipital bone, being the *power;* the weight of the cranium and the face in front of the *atlas* being the *resistance*. (When a person goes to sleep soundly, or dies in a sitting posture, the head *falls forward*, because

the *trapezium* muscle (the *power*) suddenly ceases to act.) 2. The *pelvis*, supported by the heads of the *femoral* (thigh) bones, when raising the trunk from the stooping position, as when bent forwards with the face to the ground (see Fig. 74). 3. The foot moving up and down, the toes tapping the ground (the leg slightly raised), the ankle joint the *fulcrum*, the front of the foot and any object carried by it the *weight* or resistance, and the *gastrocnemius* muscle attached to the *os calcis* the power. 4. The movement of the forearm on the elbow, the *humerus* the *fulcrum*, the *triceps* muscle of the back of the arm the *power*, and the hand and its contents the *weight* to be overcome. 5. The trunk, when held *erect*, or rather the *pelvis*, *spinal column*, and *head*, which, as *weight* or resistance, are raised and maintained in their erect position, as a continuous bar, by the *flexor* and *extensor* muscles of the thighs, the *power* which act on the *pelvis* immediately above the hip joints, which form the *fulcrum*.

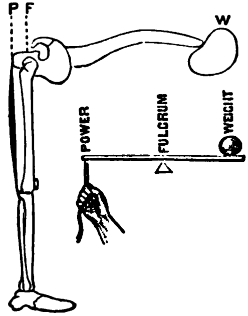


Fig. 74. Lever of the First order.

433. In **Levers** of the **Second kind** the power and the *weight* act on the *same* side of the *fulcrum*, the *weight* being the nearer. A pair of nut-crackers; a loaded wheelbarrow resting on its wheel (the fulcrum), its handles being raised up; the oar of a boat in the act of rowing.

The following are illustrations of this kind of lever in the human body:—

1. The bones of the foot, when we stand "tip-toe," the toes the *fulcrum*; the *ankle joint* and *body resting* on it the weight; and the *gastrocnemius* muscle, pulling at the *os calcis*, the power (see Fig. 75).

2. The lower, jaw in opening (pulling down) the mouth.

434. In **Levers** of the **Third kind** the *power* and the *weight* act on the *same* side of the *fulcrum;* but the *power* is in this case the nearer. The following are examples of this kind of lever:—A man *pulling* (raising) the upper end of an inclined ladder from against the wall, his foot being placed

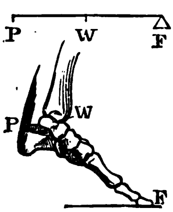


Fig. 75. Lever of the Second order. The Bones of the Foot when standing on tip-toe.

against the *foot of the ladder* as fulcrum (see Fig. 76); a pair of common fire-tongs used to hold a lump of coal; the treadle of a lathe.

The following are examples of this order of levers in the human body:—

1. The *radius* of the fore-arm pulled up by the *biceps* muscle.
2. The *bones of the foot,* when the heel rests on the ground, and the toes are pulled upwards by the muscles at the front of the leg.

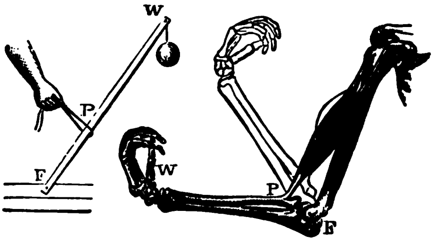


Fig. 76. Lever of the Third Order.

435. With this form of lever, *velocity* of movement is gained in exchange for *power lost.* For instance, in *raising* a cup to the mouth in order to drink, probably a power eight to ten times equivalent to that of gravity—that is, to that due to the mere weight of the cup—is expended; but the cup is moved to the lips with eight to ten times the velocity with which it would otherwise move. The great advantage of this arrangement will be immediately seen, if we only imagine the inconvenience which would result if every time we raised a cup of drink or a morsel of food to the lips, such lifting took eight to ten times longer than it now does.

436. The Erect Position of the Body in Standing is maintained by the complicated *antagonistic* actions of the *voluntary* muscles, which neutralize or *balance* each others *contraction,* as follows:—

(*a*) The muscles of the calf, acting against the foot as the *basis of support* of the body, *contract,* pulling the body *backward,* and thus prevent its falling forward.

(*b*) The *antagonist* muscles of the *fron'* of the leg and thigh contract, pull the body forwards, and *neutralize* the action of those of the calf.

(*c*) The muscles of the buttocks, spine, and back of the neck *neutralize* or *balance* the forward pulling action of those of the leg and thigh.

(*d*) The muscles of the *front* of the abdomen and throat again

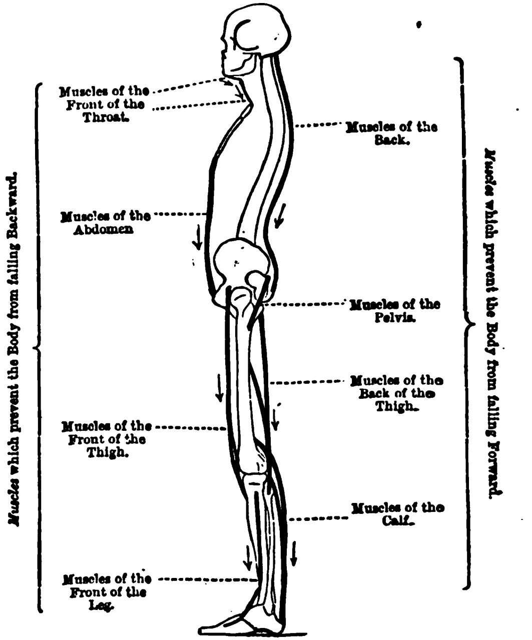

Muscles which prevent the Body from falling Backward.
Muscles of the Front of the Throat.
Muscles of the Abdomen
Muscles of the Front of the Thigh.
Muscles of the Front of the Leg.
Muscles of the Back.
Muscles of the Pelvis.
Muscles of the Back of the Thigh.
Muscles of the Calf.
Muscles which prevent the Body from falling Forward.

Fig. 77. Showing the action and attachments of the most important muscles by which the Erect Posture of the Body is maintained. The *arrows* show the direction in which the muscles pull, the *feet* acting as the fixed Basis. (After Huxley.)

balance the pulling-backward action of those of the buttocks, spine, and neck.

This mutual balancing of the various *antagonistic* muscles is shown in fig. 77. The arrows show the *direction* in which the muscles tend to pull the body.

In this way the body is kept *erect*; its *centre of gravity*, however, being *high* up in the trunk, it is, though a process of *almost unconscious* voluntary action, one of considerable delicacy. A blow on the head, a stab or shot, which produces a sufficient *nervous shock* to *suspend* the action of the *will* over the *voluntary* muscles, suddenly arrests their action and causes the body to *fall.*

437. Walking is accomplished as follows:—

(1.) By raising one leg from the ground, bending the knee, and extending the ankle, which thus throws the weight of the body *forward*, and on to *one* leg only.

(2.) By raising the opposite limb on the ball of the big toe, and throwing the body *forward*, and on to the limb *first* moved.

(3.) By repeating the first movement.

In walking, *one* leg or the other always *rests* upon the ground; very quick walking, however, passes by insensible gradations into *running*.

438. Running is accomplished by similar but more sudden and violent means, *both* feet for exceedingly short periods being *simultaneously* raised from the ground. In *running*, the legs advance by *muscular contraction*, in *walking* they advance more by the mere *pendulum swing* of gravity.

439. Jumping or *leaping* is effected,—

(1.) By the sudden contraction of the *muscles of the calf*, by which the *heels* are suddenly raised and the body *jerked* off the ground.

(2.) By the simultaneous contraction of the muscles which bend the *thigh* on the pelvis.

(3.) By the sudden extension of the legs by the contraction of their *extensor* muscles, this movement following immediately on the two movements first described.

Hopping simply consists of jumping on *one* leg only. A *series* of rapid low jumps executed *alternately* by each leg constitutes *running*.

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE ORGANS OF THE VOICE.

440. Voice.—The most delicate and perfect *motor* apparatus in the body is, perhaps, that of the voice: it has been calculated that upwards of 900 movements per minute can be made by the movable organs of speech during reading, speaking, singing, &c. All sound is sensation, produced by the rapid *vibration* of air, or some highly *elastic* medium. *Voice* is *sound* produced by sonorous vibrations, or aerial sound-waves, excited by the rapid vibration of the *true vocal cords,* themselves put into vibration by the rush of air expelled during *expiration* through the *glottis* or narrow chink left between them when they are *tightly stretched.* (See fig. 80.)

441. The student will have observed that if clothes lines or telegraph wires are allowed to swing *loosely* in the wind, no sound is heard; but that if drawn very tight, they will emit a *musical sound* with every gust of wind. Such is precisely the case with the *vocal cords;* if they be allowed to hang *loosely* while we *breathe,* no sound will be heard; but if they are suddenly drawn tight, the mode of breathing being in every other respect unchanged, sound (voice) will be immediately heard. The principal organs of the voice are the *larynx,* or voice-box, and the included *vocal cords.*

442. Speech is ordinarily *voice* carved, chiselled out, or modified into words by the tongue, lips, teeth, palate, cheeks, nose, &c.; but there may be *speech* without *voice,* as in whispering, in which the *vocal cords* play no part. So, also, there may be voice without *speech,* as when we simply breathe with the *vocal cords* in a state of *tension.*

443. The Larynx (from Gr. *larugx,* orifice of the windpipe) is the somewhat complex *funnel*-shaped structure at the top of the *trachea.* It is situated immediately in *front* of the upper part of the *œsophagus* and under the tongue. Its *thyroid* cartilage forms the well-known prominence so strongly marked in some men at the upper part of the throat, termed the *pomum Adami,* or Adam's apple; so named, it is said, that because when Eve gave Adam some of the forbidden fruit, a portion of it probably stuck in his throat and produced the swelling or enlargement referred to. (See fig. 78.)

444. Structure of the Larynx.—The larynx comprises the following essential parts or structures :—1. A tubular or *funnel*-shaped cartilaginous box or framework. 2. Two *elastic* ligaments, bands, or cushions of *yellow elastic tissue,* situated one on each side of the larynx, separated from each other by an opening in the middle of the larynx, between the two bands, which are termed the vocal *cords.* 3. Muscles for giving movement to cartilages, and thus *tightening* or *relaxing* the *vocal cords,* so that they may either be put *into* or *out* of action at the command of the *will,* or by which the *sound* they produce may be modified as desired.

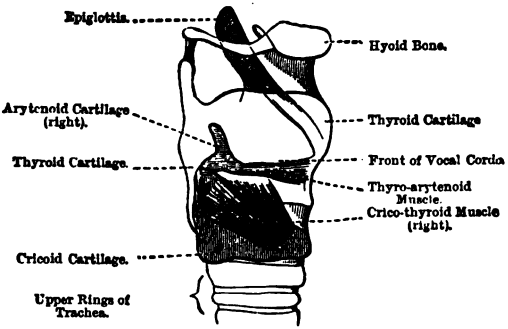


Fig. 78. Plan of Larynx and its Cartilages.

The Thyroid Cartilage is supposed to be transparent, so that the Arytenoid Cartilage, Vocal Cord, Cricoid Cartilage, Thyro-arytenoid Muscle and Epiglottis are to be seen through it.

It is lined on its interior with *mucous* membrane, and is abundantly supplied with nerves, chiefly derived from the *pneumogastric* nerve.

445. Cartilages of the Larynx.—The larynx is built up of four principal cartilages—viz., the thyroid, cricoid, and two arytenoid cartilages.

446. The Thyroid Cartilage (from Gr. *thureos,* a shield; *eidos,* shape) consists of a broad plate of cartilage bent back upon itself into the shape of the letter V, as seen from the top, or as it has been fancifully described, the shape of a *shield,* from which it has derived its name. The angle of the V is turned to the front of the throat, forming the "Adam's apple," referred to in sec. 443. The top of this cartilage is attached by a ligament to the *hyoid* bone of the tongue, its base is attached to the *outside* of the *cricoid* cartilage, so that it may be rocked *backwards* and *forwards*, see-saw-like, and thus *tighten* or *relax* the vocal cords fastened on opposite sides at its interior. (See fig. 78.)]

447. The Cricoid Cartilage, which in shape somewhat resembles a *signet* ring, is a complete *ring* of cartilage, the *back* of which is much *broader* than its *front*. It is mounted on the topmost ring of the *trachea*, and supports the *thyroid* cartilage, in such a manner as to permit of the *rocking* motion described. (See fig. 78.)

448. The Arytenoid Cartilages (from Gr. *arutaina*, a pitcher) are two peculiar, somewhat triangular and *pitcher-shaped* cartilages, situated towards the back of the thyroid cartilage, and to which the *back* ends of the vocal ligaments are attached, their *front* ends being attached to the inner angle of the thyroid cartilage. These cartilages are capable of movement (under the action of muscles) in every direction, these movements again being communicated to the vocal cords. Their movements, in some respects, resemble those of the common "bell-crank." (See fig. 78.)

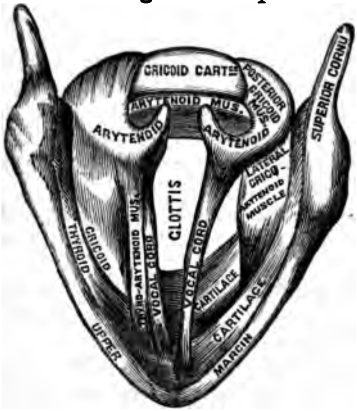


Fig. 79. Bird's eye view of the top of Larynx.

449. The Epiglottis is the thin elastic, yellowish, leaf-shaped plate of *fibro-cartilage* attached to the thyroid cartilage and the hyoid bone which forms a sort of trap-door valve protecting the entrance to the larynx. (See *Deglutition*.)

450. The True Vocal Cords or Ligaments are the two *elastic* bands or cushions of yellow elastic tissue previously described: their surfaces are lined by *mucous* membrane. They are somewhat triangular in their cross section, the bases of the triangles forming the inner edges towards the sides of the larynx, and the apices, the free edges between which the *glottis* (the opening to the windpipe) lies.

Their *front ends* are inserted in the notch in the interior of the front of the *thyroid* cartilage (see fig. 79), their *back* ends being attached to the bases of the movable *arytenoid* cartilages.

451. The vocal cords are moved towards each other by the contraction of the *arytenoid* muscle. They are stretched by the *crico-thyroid* muscles, which pull, by a rocking movement, the thyroid cartilage *forward* (see sec. 446); the *thyro-arytenoid* muscles pull the thyroid cartilage *backward*, and thus *relax* the cords; the *posterior crico-arytenoid* muscles *dilate* the glottis (see fig. 79). The *thyro-arytenoid* muscles are said to be the chief muscles by which the *vocal* cords are made *parallel* to each other.

452. When the *mucous membrane* of the vocal cords becomes swollen or ulcerated, the edges of the cords loose their normal *elasticity*, and *hoarseness* or loss of voice is produced.

Two *folds* of *mucous* membrane, a little above the true vocal cords, are termed the *upper* or *false* vocal cords. The *space* between the *true* and *false* vocal cords is termed the *ventricle* of the *larynx*.

453. Difference of Pitch or Note depends upon the number of times the *vocal cords vibrate* per second. This again depends upon the *length* and the *tightness* (tension) of the vocal cords. The *longer* the portion of the cords *vibrating* (other things being equal), the less the number of vibrations per second, and therefore the *lower* or more *base* the note; on the contrary, the *tighter* or *shorter* the vocal cords, the *greater* the number of vibrations per second, and therefore the *higher* or more *acute* the note. In *falsetto* notes, it is said that only one-half of the vocal cords are in action. Women and children have voices of higher pitch, because their vocal cords are relatively *shorter* than those of men.

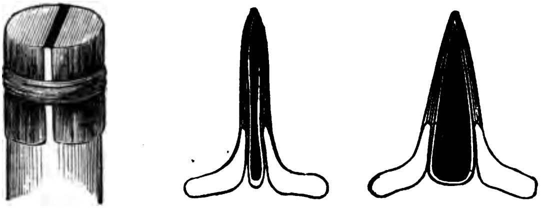
The *range* of the voice depends upon the extent to which the vocal cords can be adjusted *during vocalization*, by either being shortened or lengthened, tightened or relaxed. Accuracy of intonation or singing depends chiefly upon the precision with which the singer can regulate the action of the muscles concerned in adjusting the position, length, and tension of the vocal cords and the vocal cavities.

The voices of boys "break," because of the sudden growth or enlargement of the larynx, and consequent increase in length of the vocal cords, at from 14 to 16 years of age. No such enlargement takes place in the larynxes of girls: therefore their voices undergo no such sudden change.

454. Loudness of Voice depends chiefly upon the force with which the air is driven through the *glottis*, and the *resonance* of the vocal cavities.

455. Essentials to the production of Voice.—From what has been shown, it will be seen that the following conditions are essential to the production of the human voice :—

1. The existence of *parallel* elastic ligaments (vocal cords) in the requisite state of *tension*.



Vibrating Membrane. Position of Vocal Cords during Vocalization. Position of Vocal Cords during ordinary breathing.

Fig. 80.

2. The passage through the *parallel chink* between these cords of a current of air moving with a sufficient force to put them into the requisite state of *vibration*—that is, to cause them neither to vibrate too *slowly* nor too *rapidly.*

To *modulate* the voice, the additional contrivances previously mentioned are also necessary.

456. The Vowel Sounds are the *open* continuous sounds produced by the passage of air through the glottis when the vocal cords are in the position of vocalization, and the mouth is left open. The *difference* in the vowel sounds—a, e, i, o, u—depends upon alterations made in the size and shape of the cavity of the mouth *during* the *the emission* of the original *open* sound just described.

457. The Consonantal Sounds are sounds produced by the *interruption* of the passage of the current of air issuing through the *glottis,* and causing the *open* vowel sound just described, by the interposition of the *tongue, teeth, lips,* or the *front, middle,* or *back* part of the *tongue.*

When the interruption is caused by gently and momentarily closing the lips, the vibrating air-current from the glottis suddenly forcing them open, the *explosive labial* consonants (lip-letters) B and P are produced; when the interruption overcome is offered by the tongue against the *teeth,* the *explosive dental* consonants (tooth-letters) T and D are sounded; when the *momentary* resistance is offered by the middle or back of the *tongue* and the *palate,* the *gutturals* K and G (hard) are sounded.

When the passage of the vibrating air from the glottis, though interrupted, does not cease, but only changes its direction, we get continuous consonants; if diverted through the *nose* by the closure of the lips, M is sounded; but if the diversion of the current is effected by the tongue, pushed against the palate, N is produced.

When the size of the air-passages, through which the vibrating sonorous and ærial current is issuing is *greatly reduced,* the sounds, s, sh, th, f, v, g (soft), and other similar sounds are produced.

CHAPTER XIX.

THE SENSES AND THE ORGANS OF THE SENSES.

458. **The Organs of the Senses** are the instruments by which the mind is brought into *relation* with the *external* world; or, in other words, the instruments by which the mind is acted upon by natural agencies *external* to the brain. They consist essentially of *nerve expansions* (spread out and specially prepared to receive the stimulus of the particular agent, mechanical, optical, sonorous, olfactory, or gustatory), which are in general connected with the *brain* by special nerves. The nature of the sensation depends to a great extent upon the nature of the *covering* of the nerve expansion intervening between the terminal nervous *network* and the external exciting agent.

459. There are six senses, viz. :—the *muscular* sense, the sense of *touch*, of *taste*, of *smell*, of *hearing*, and of *sight*.

In all cases sensation takes place in the *brain*, and not in the nerves or their outer extremities.

460. **The Muscular Sense** is the sense by which we judge of the *relative weight* of a body, or the *degree of resistance* it offers to effort made to put it into movement.

461. **The Sense of Touch**, or the sense by which we become acquainted with the existence, shape, and properties of bodies, is common to the whole body, but more especially to the *skin*, some portions of which are very much more highly endowed with this power than others. (See *Skin*, secs. 397–9.)

It is by this sense chiefly we get a notion of *solidity* and *roundness*. In this sense it is the corrective of sight, by which, until corrected by "touch," aided by experience and judgment, all objects appear flat. To persons born blind, and whose sight has been first obtained by the aid of the oculist, all objects at first appear as though they were *flat* and *touching* the eyes.

462. The organ of *touch* consists essentially of an *external* layer of *epithelium*, which, being in contact with the external agent, first receives and modifies its action, which it then transmits to the *internal* layer of the *tactile* organ (consisting of plexuses of nerve fibrils) immediately below it, which transmit the *stimulus* thus originated to the brain, by means of the *cerebral*, or the posterior branches (sensory) of the *spinal* nerves.

The nature of the sensation, to a great extent, depends on the thickness of the medium or covering external to the nerves. If, for instance, the *cuticle* be abraded, and the skin below be touched with a point (however gently) instead of the ordinary sensation of touch, that of *pain* will be produced.

463. **The Tongue** is the chief organ of **Taste**; but this power is also possessed by the back of the *palate* and the fauces. The tongue consists essentially of a mass of voluntary muscular fibre, covered externally with a layer of *mucous membrane*, in which the sense of taste resides. It is divided by a median line into two lateral symmetrical halves, and has a tip, border or edge, and *dorsum* or back (see fig. 54). Taste is an exceedingly complex sensation.

The *mucous membrane* of the tongue is studded with *papillæ*, of which there are *three* varieties. (See fig. 54.):—

(1.) The *Filiform* (thread-like), which are most numerous, especially about the middle of the dorsum of the tongue: they fill up the interspaces between the other *papillæ*.

(2.) The *Fungiform* (mushroom-shaped), which are larger at the *top* than the *base*. These are chiefly scattered over the *sides* and *tip* of the tongue.

(3.) The *Circumvallate* or *Calyciform* (from Lat. *circum*, round; and *vallo*, I dig) consist of a central mass or mound-like projection, surrounded by a circular trench-like depression. They are 1-20th to 1-12th of an inch in diameter, and may be seen at the back of the tongue, arranged in two rows, like the letter V, *four* or *five* in each row.

The papillæ become distended when acted upon by solutions capable of penetrating their mucous covering. The furred appearance of the tongue, when the stomach or intestines are out of order, is caused by the matting of the epithelium, produced by the thickened mucous.

The *larger* papillæ are very vascular, and receive *nerve fibrils* from the *glossopharyngeal* and the *fifth* pair of nerves. The former supplies the *back* of the *tongue* and *palate*, which is the chief region of taste; the latter chiefly supplies the *front* of the tongue.

464. The Sense of Smell is exercised through the *unciliated mucous* (Schneiderian) membrane which lines the upper parts of the *nasal cavities*, and which receives its supply of nerve-filaments from the *olfactory lobes* and *not* from the fifth pair of nerves. (See sec. 519.)

It is excited by the contact of odoriferous particles, in all probability undergoing the movements involved in the process of *oxidization*; since (1) *odorous* bodies are *oxidizable;* and (2) *no* sensation of *smell* can be excited if *oxygen* be shut off from the nose.

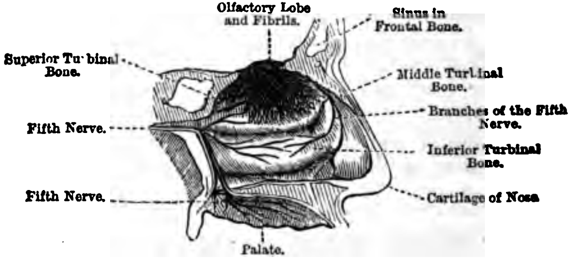


Fig. 81. Vertical Longitudinal Section of the Nasal Cavity. Showing Olfactory Lobe and distribution of the Olfactory Filaments, and the Fifth (Trigeminal) Nerve on the Right wall of the Nose.

465. The Nose is the triangular-shaped organ situated in the middle of the face. Its *roof* is formed by the *cribriform plate* of the *ethmoid* bone of the skull, through the *sieve-like* apertures of which the *olfactory filaments* (false nerves) pass. It is bounded in front and laterally by the *nasal bones* and *cartilages;* its floor is formed by the hard and soft palate. It is divided into *two cavities* by the *nasal septum* (which consists partly of bone, the *vomer*, and partly of *cartilage*). These cavities open out into the air in front of the nose by means of the two *nostrils*, and into the *pharynx* behind, by the two *posterior nares* (nostrils) situated immediately over the sides of the *velum* or soft palate.

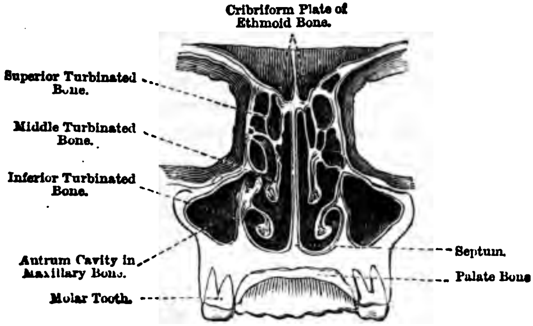

Cribriform Plate of Ethmoid Bone.
Superior Turbinated Bone.
Middle Turbinated Bone.
Inferior Turbinated Bone.
Antrum Cavity in Maxillary Bone.
Molar Tooth.
Septum.
Palate Bone

Fig. 82.

The nasal cavities proper open into a number of small cavities or *sinuses* in the *frontal sphenoid* and *malar* and *turbinal* bones. These cavities and tortuous passages tend to warm the air, and thus promote smell. The true *olfactory chamber* lies above the base of the *middle turbinated* bone, and therefore out of the general current of the breathing air; therefore, if the odour is but faint, it is necessary to *sniff* the particles upward. A cold, by causing *swelling* of the *mucous* membrane which covers the *lower turbinated bones*, impedes the passage of the odour-laden air to the upper part of the nose, over which the *olfactory nerve fibrils* are distributed, and thus causes partial loss of *smell.*

466. Sound.—The *external* cause of sound is mere *mechanical* movement. Sound is almost invariably produced by *air* in a state of *sonorous vibration*, that is, air oscillating *backwards* and *forwards* with great rapidity. If the *wave movement* be either too *quick* or too *slow*, it will not produce sound.

The *kind* of sound—that is, its *pitch* or *note*—depends on the number of waves per second, being *higher* or *lower* respectively, as the number of waves per second is *greater* or *less*. For instance, if 250 waves strike the ear per second, the sound of *middle* C will be produced; if 512, that of *upper* C will be produced.

467. The Sensation of Hearing is excited in the brain by means of a *molecular movement*, set up in the *nerve fibrils* of the *internal ear* or labrynth, by the rapid vibration of some external *elastic* body, and transmitted to the brain by the *auditory nerve*. The essential parts of the organs of hearing are the *membranous labyrinth*, and the *scala media* of the *cochlea*.

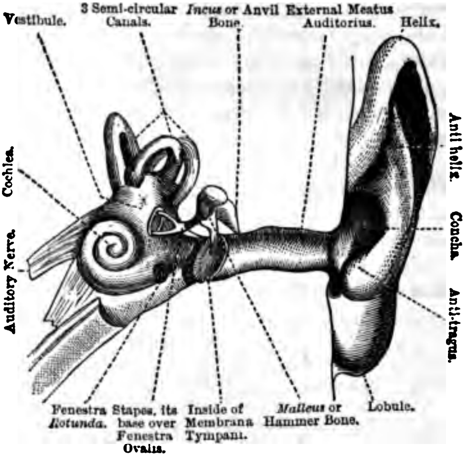


Fig. 83. Diagram of Ear.

468. The Organs of Hearing (the ears)—each consist of three parts, viz.:—

(1.) **The external ear**, comprising the *pinna* or auricle, the gristly appendage attached to the side of the head, (which both serves as a natural ornament and to collect the vibrations of the air,) and the *auditory canal* (meatus) or passage by which the vibrating air is conducted to the membrane of the *tympanum*. The meatus is lined by mucous membrane, studded with the *ceruminous* or wax glands.

(2.) **The tympanum,** or *middle ear,* (which consists of an irregular cavity in the *petrous* part of the *temporal bone*), bounded on its outer side by the *membrana tympani,* and on its *inner* side by the outer wall of the *bony labyrinth.* It is traversed by a chain of movable bones, consisting of the *malleus* or hammer bone, the *incus* or anvil bone, the *stapes* or stirrup bone, by which the vibrations are conveyed from the external air, through the middle ear, to the membrane in the *fenestra ovalis* in the side of the labyrinth. The tympanum opens into the *pharynx* by the *Eustachian tube;* by this arrangement the *air* enclosed in the tympanum is kept at the same *tension* or pressure as that of the external atmosphere.

(3.) **The labyrinth,** or internal ear, consisting of the *vestibule,* the *three semi-circular canals,* and the *cochlea,* and their *membranous,* nerve, fluid, and other contents.

469. The Vestibule is the middle or central chamber of the *internal ear* or *labyrinth* which opens into the *cochlea* and the *semicircular canals.* It is situated at the inner side of the tympanum, with which it communicates by

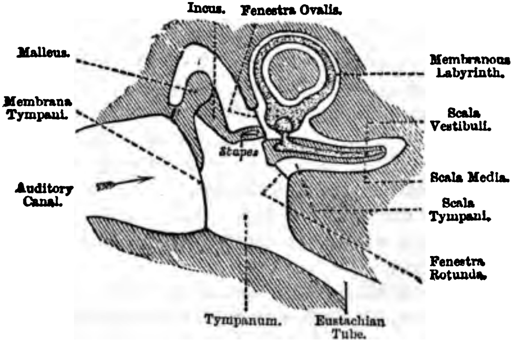


Fig. 84. Plan of Ear.

The Scalæ of the Cochlea are supposed to be unrolled. The shaded portion represents Bone.

means of two *membrane-stopped* openings, viz. :—the *fenestra ovalis* and the *fenestra rotunda.*

The *vestibule* contains a *larger* membranous *sac* termed the *utricle*, and a *smaller* one termed the *saccule*, or frequently the *sacculus hemisphericus.*

470. **The Semicircular Canals** are three long arched tubes about $\frac{1}{20}$ of an inch in diameter. These three hollow arches, which form the greater parts of circles, consist of two nearly *vertical* canals (an *anterior* and a *posterior*) and a *horizontal* canal.

471. **The Membranous Labyrinth** consists of a closed membranous sac of the same form as, and a little smaller than, the *vestibule* and the three *semi-circular* canals by which it is enclosed. It occupies the middle of these bony structures, and is separated from them by a clear *liquid* termed the *perilymph*, its interior being filled with a similar liquid, termed the *endolymph.* The *vestibular* portion of the *membranous labyrinth* consists of two sacs, —a larger, termed the *utricle*, and a smaller, termed the *saccule.* Each canal has a larger or dilated end, termed its *ampulla*, the nerves of which are covered with delicate stiff filaments. The fibres of the *auditory nerve* are distributed over the inner walls of the *ampullæ*, the *saccule*, and the *utricle.*

472. **Otoconia.**—In order to increase the effect of the *vibratile concussion* on the auditory *nerve filaments*, little masses of minute crystalline grains of stone (carbonate of lime), termed *otoliths*, or *otoconia*, are supplied to the walls of the *saccule* and *utricle*, opposite the point where the nerves are distributed.

473. The *membranous labyrinth* is possibly the apparatus through which we distinguished the *intensity* and *quantity* of sound.

474. **The Cochlea** (Lat. a snail's shell), a conical shell-like structure, forms the front portion of the *labyrinth.* It possesses a central *axis*, termed the *modiolus*, round which a partition (partly of bone, partly of membrane), termed the *lamina spiralis*, winds spirally, 2½ times, dividing the spiral canal of the cochlea into two *scalæ*

or passages, termed respectively the *scala vestibuli* and *scala tympani.* Between these two passages is a third, termed the *scala media,* which is contained between the two walls of the membranous portion of the *lamina spiralis.* The latter is really a membranous *bag,* twisted *spirally* round the edge of the bony portion of the *lamina spiralis,* and its cavity forms the *scala media,* as described. One of its walls, more elastic than the other, is covered over with minute rod-like bodies, termed the *fibres of Corti,* which, looking like so many keys on a keyboard, serve more readily to take up the vibrations communicated to the *endolymph.* The *interior* of the walls of the *scala media* are covered with fibres of the *auditory* nerve. One end of the *scala media* is closed, the other opens into the *sacculus hemisphericus.*

475. The *cochlea* is possibly that portion of the *auditory apparatus* by which we are enabled to distinguish the quality—that is, the *pitch* or *tone* of sound.

476. **The Modus Operandi of Hearing.**—The air is put into rapid *sonorous vibration,* the aerial waves enter the *external auditory canal,* impinge upon the *membrana tympani,* and put it into the same rate of vibration; the *malleus,* pressing against its interior side, is put into vibration by the *membrana tympani;* the *malleus* puts the *incus* into vibration; the *incus* attached to the *stapes,* puts it into vibration; the *stapes* attached to the *membrane* filling up the *fenestra ovalis,* an oval aperture in the vestibule, puts it into vibration; this membrane puts the *endolymph* (in the interior of the *semicircular canals, ampullæ, saccule, utricle,* and *scala media*), into vibration; the *endolymph,* dashing against the auditory nerve *fibrils, otoliths, otoconia,* and *fibres of Corti,* puts them into vibration, the *fibres of Corti,* like the keys on a pianoforte, only taking up the vibrations corresponding to their length and special note. The vibrations thus set up *synchronously* with the external vibrating air, acting as an *excitant* on the *auditory nerve,* cause it to transmit to the *brain* a *nerve-movement* or stimulus which wakens up in it the *sensation of sound.*

A little membrane-stopped hole, the *fenestra rotunda* in the vestibule, facilitates the *movements* of the *endolymph*, by giving it more play.

477. **Light** is the *external* agent or *cause* of *normal* or objective vision. Of its real nature we *know* absolutely nothing, all our knowledge of it being purely *hypothetical*. Yet in the whole range of human knowledge we possess no explanation of any of the phenomena of nature more complete and satisfactory—if even so complete and satisfactory as—that afforded by the *undulatory hypothesis of light*, of the various complex and beautiful phenomena of light and colour.

478. **Undulatory Hypothesis of Light and Colour.**—This hypothesis assumes that all *planetary space*, also all *interstitial space* (the pores or spaces between the particles of matter), is filled with a highly attenuated, *imponderable*, invisible, *elastic* fluid, termed *luminiferous ether*. It also assumes that this *ether* is capable of being put into an up-and-down *wave-movement*, which in *direction* and general character resembles that of the sea, but which, in the *minuteness* of the waves, and the rapidity of the propagation of their movement, is utterly inconceivable to the human mind. It is supposed that these waves come "rolling in" through the *openings* and *transparent humours* of the eye, *pitching* themselves against the *retina* at the back of the eye, like sea-waves pitching against the *rocks* or against a *sea-wall*. It is further supposed that the nerve fibrils of the retina are shaken by the *wave concussions* they thus receive into a series of vibrations, that these vibrations act as a *stimulus*, which, transmitted to the *brain* by the *optic nerve*, produces the *sensation* of sight.

It is further supposed, that if the nerve fibres of the *retina* receive 390 *millions* of millions per second of wave *concussions*, they will themselves be put into the same rapid *rate of vibration*, and stimulate the brain, through the medium of the *optic nerve*, so as to cause a *sensation* of just visible *redness;* that if they are put into vibration by *shorter* light-producing waves, travelling at the rate of 754 millions of millions of *waves* per second, they will produce a just visible sensation of *blue* or *violet* colour.

If the *nerves* of the retina be made to *vibrate* at intermediate rates to the above, one or other of the colours of the spectrum or rainbow will be produced; but if the rate of vibration be either *very much higher* or *lower* than those given, no sensation of *light* or *colour* will be experienced.

479. Colour, like sound, is thus a sensation consequent on *brain-change* produced by the *transmission* of a *molecular movement* or change in the *substance* of the nerve fibrils to the brain, the movement being *originated* by an external *vibrating agent.* In the case of sound, the external agent is the *air;* in the case of light or colour, it is the *luminiferous ether.*

480. Complementary Colours.—*White* or *solar* light probably consists of three *primary* colours. The *primary* colours, according to Professor Clark Maxwell and Mr. Benson, are *red, green,* and *blue.* When *one* of these is absent, the *compound* or *secondary* colour which remains is termed its *complementary colour.*

Thus, if the *red* rays of solar light be *absorbed* or *extinguished,* objects otherwise *white* will appear of a *bluish green.* If the *green* rays be absorbed, the same object will appear *pink.* If the *blue* rays be absorbed, such objects will appear *yellow.* In short, any *two colours* which combined will produce *a white* are said to be *complementary* to each other.

EXPERIMENT.—Look steadily with one eye for a short time at a bright *red* wafer on white paper held in the sunlight. Turn the eye on to some other part of the paper, a *complementary green image* of the wafer will be seen. This arises from a portion of the retina being exhausted of its sensitiveness for the *red* rays, while it still retains its sensitiveness for its *complementary green.*

481. Colour Blindness, or Daltonism, consists in the inability of certain eyes to distinguish particular colours. Singularly the most common defect of this

is the inability to distinguish *red* from *black*, *green*, &c.

It is not yet known whether this weakness arises from a defect in the *brain*, the *retina*, or the *humours* of the eye. The employment of *colour-blind* persons as railway guards might lead to most serious accidents.

482. **The Eye** is essentially an *optical* instrument, constructed for receiving, *bending* (refracting), and throwing the rays of light on to a screen (the retina) at its back, so that it shall receive a very *minute* and *inverted*, but clear and definite, *picture* or *image* of the surrounding objects. In fact, in no case do we see the external objects themselves, but *pictures of them formed by the light* sent from them, and *focussed* on the back of the eye (the retina), as just described. The eye is, in fact, a sort of water *camera obscura:* it is moved by *six* muscles attached to its external coat (the *sclerotic*). The eyes are lodged, for protection, in packings of fat in the *orbits* of the cranium.

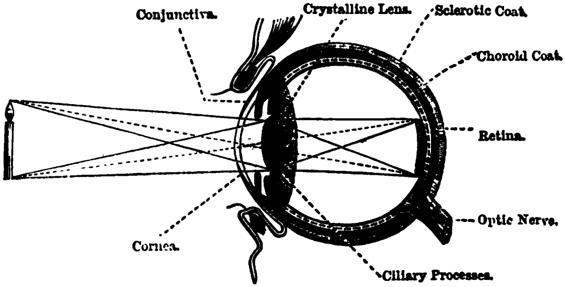


Fig. 85. Showing the formation of *inverted* optical images on the Retina at the back of the Eye.

483. **Structure of the Eye.**—The eye is a nearly round ball, about 1 inch in diameter, which encloses *three* lenses or *humours* and *two* muscles, and which consist of three *coats* or layers. It also contains nerves and blood-vessels. It is attached to the *optic nerve* behind, as an apple to its stalk.

	Coats of the Eye.	Refracting Humours.	Muscles.
1. (Outer)	Sclerotic and cornea,	Aqueous,	The Iris.
2. (Middle)	Iris, ciliary, and choroid,	Crystalline (lens),	Ciliary muscle.
3. (Inner)	Retina,	Vitreous.	

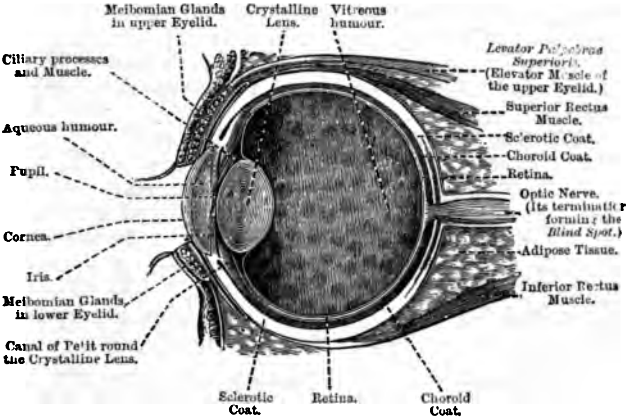

Meibomian Glands in upper Eyelid.
Crystalline Lens.
Vitreous humour.
Ciliary processes and Muscle.
Aqueous humour.
Pupil.
Cornea.
Iris.
Meibomian Glands, in lower Eyelid.
Canal of Petit round the Crystalline Lens.
Sclerotic Coat.
Retina.
Choroid Coat.
Levator Palpebrae Superioris. (Elevator Muscle of the upper Eyelid.)
Superior Rectus Muscle.
Sclerotic Coat.
Choroid Coat.
Retina.
Optic Nerve. (Its termination forming the Blind Spot.)
Adipose Tissue.
Inferior Rectus Muscle.

Fig. 86. Vertical Section of Eye-Ball.

484. The Sclerotic Coat (from Gr. *skleros*, hard) forms the external wall of the eye-ball, the "white of the eye." It is an opaque, tough, fibrous membrane, which cuts like leather, and consists chiefly of white fibrous tissue. It contains two apertures—the circular opening in front, in which the *cornea* is inserted, and the *posterior* opening through which the *optic nerve* enters. (See fig. 86.)

485. The Cornea (from Lat. *cornu*, horn) is the circular watch-glass shaped, transparent, fibrous body inserted in the aperture in the *sclerotic coat*, at the *front* of the eye, that admits the *light* by which vision is excited. (See fig. 86.) It also aids in bending or focussing the light which enters the eye.

486. The Choroid Coat (from Gr. *chorion*, the outer skin of the egg) is the delicate coat of *blood-vessels* and *black* pigment cells which forms the *middle* coat of the eye, and causes the black appearance of the pupil. When the pigment is *wanting,* as in the case of Albinoes, the blood-vessels, showing through the aperture of the pupil, give it a *red* or *pinkish* appearance. Towards the front of the eye it collects into about *sixty folds,* which are termed the *ciliary processes,* to which the *iris* is attached by a narrow fibrous ring, termed the *ciliary ligament.* (See fig. 86).

487. **The Iris** (from Lat. *rainbow*), so called from the diversity of its colour, is the *circular,* flattened, perforated *curtain* of *unstriped muscle,* nerve, connective tissue, pigment cell, and blood-vessels, which, placed *behind* the *cornea, regulates* by the contraction and expansion of its central aperture (the *pupil*) the quantity of light admitted to the eye. It divides the space between the *crystalline lens* and cornea, which contains the *aqueous humour,* into an *anterior* and a *posterior* chamber.

EXPERIMENT.—Place yourself before a looking-glass in a *dark* room with a *lighted* candle in your hand, hold the light as far away to the side as you can, while you look at the image of the *pupil* of your eye. It will appear very *large* and *dark.* Now bring the candle gradually nearer and nearer until you bring it close before the eye—the pupil becomes *smaller* and *smaller* because of the contraction of the circular muscular fibre of the iris.

488. **The Aqueous Humour** is the clear, limpid, watery fluid which fills the space in *front* of the crystalline lens, and bathes both sides of the *iris.*

489. **The Crystalline Lens or Humour** is the biconvex lens-shaped, transparent, jelly-like body, placed almost immediately *behind* the *iris,* by which the light entering the eye is *focussed* and made to form *inverted pictures* or *images* on the *retina* at the back of the eye. It is about $\frac{1}{3}$ of an inch in diameter and $\frac{1}{5}$ of an inch thick. Its general form and properties may be well studied in the eye of a sheep. It is retained in its position by the *suspensory ligament,* and is encircled by a triangular

cavity, termed the *canal* of *Petit,* which probably gives space for its *adjustment.*

Short Sight (*myopia*).—If the *crystalline lens,* or even the *cornea,* is too *round,* the *light* is bent to a *focus* too *soon*—that is, before it reaches the *retina,* by which an indistinct picture is formed. This is termed *short sight,* and is corrected by the use of *bi-concave* (*thin* in the middle) spectacles, which *bend* the rays *outwards* (farther apart) before they enter the eye.

Long Sight (*presbyopia*).—If the *crystalline* lens or the *cornea* is too *flat,* the rays of *light* entering the eye are not bent *quickly* enough—that is, they reach the *retina before* they are brought to a *focus,* the *focus* of the lens being *behind* the *retina.* In this case bi-convex (*thick* in the middle) spectacles, which *bend* the rays *nearer* together before they enter the eye, are used. This is termed *long, weak,* or *aged* sight, objects, as in reading, being held at a considerable distance from the eyes.

490. **The Vitreous Humour** is the large, spherical, transparent, *glassy-looking* lens or humour which fills up the greater part of the interior of the eyeball. It consists of a jelly-like albuminoid fluid, inclosed in a delicate capsule, termed the *hyaloid* membrane. (See figs. 85, 86.)

491. **The Retina** (from Lat. *rete,* network) is the delicate coat or membrane which may be seen lining the interior of the back of the eye, when the eyeball is carefully cut into a *front* and a *back* half. It consists partly of an *expansion* of the *optic nerve,* and partly of *other* structures, which probably assist in enabling the *light* to produce the requisite impression on the *nervous fibrils* of the optic nerve. A transverse section of the retina, seen under the microscope, shows, commencing from the front of the eye, the following layers or structures:—

1. Anterior *limiting membrane* (next to capsule of vitreous humour).
2. Layer of *nerve fibres* from optic nerve.
3. Layer of ganglionic corpuscles.
4. Layer of convoluted nervous fibrils.
5. Inner layer of granules (molecular layer).
6. Outer layer of granules.
7. Layer of rods and cones (Jacob's rods).
8. Posterior *limiting membrane* (next the choroid).

492. The *rods* and *cones* probably possess the power of converting the *vibrations* of the *luminiferous ether* into a stimulus to the fibres of the optic nerve, by which it transmits to the brain the movement which wakens up in it the *sensation* of *light* or *colour*.

493. **The Blind Spot**, optic pore or *punctum caecum*, is the *insensible* (to light) portion of the *retina*, situated at the back of the eye at the *entrance* of the *optic nerve* and *central artery*. The *optic nerve* enters the eye a little inside (towards the nose) of the *optic axis* or line which passes *perpendicularly* through the *centre* of the *crystalline lens*.

Images of objects falling on the *blind spots* of the eyes are quite *invisible*.

EXPERIMENT (1.) Hold the book so that the letters A and B shall be 9 or 10 inches or thereabout from the eyes.

(2.) Shut the *right* eye and look *continuously* and *steadily* at the letter B on the *right*. The letter A will also be seen.

(3.) Move the book slowly towards the eye, taking great care not to alter the *direction* in which it looks. At a certain point the letter A will disappear, its image is now on the *blind spot*.

(4.) *Continue* to move it *towards* the eye, and its *image* will be removed from the *blind spot* to a *sensitive* part of the *retina*, and *both* letters will again come into sight.

A **B**

494. The *blind spot* has no *rods* or *cones*, but is abundantly supplied with *nerve fibres*, thus showing that the *light* does not act *originally* on the *nerve fibres*, but upon the *rods* and *cones*, which then communicate and originate the necessary movement to the fibrils themselves.

495. **The Bright Spot of Sömmering**, *macula lutea*, or yellow spot, is a round, yellowish, elevated spot, about $\frac{1}{24}$ of an inch in diameter, situated in the *centre* of the back of the eye in the *axis of vision*, and about $\frac{1}{10}$ of an inch *outside* of the *blind spot*. Its *summit* contains a little pit or *depression* termed the *fovea centralis*. It is the seat of most *acute vision*, yet it has *no nerve fibres*

from the optic nerve, but it is full of close-set *cones*, and contains *nerve corpuscles.*

496. The Duration of the Impression of Light on the retina is about $\frac{1}{8}$ of a second. If, therefore, a lighted stick be rapidly moved round in a circle so that it shall return to the point from which it started in less than $\frac{1}{8}$ of a second, it will be seen as though it were a *luminous circle.* The appearance of the firework termed the "Catherine wheel," and of the pictures in a *zoetrope,* are due to this cause.

497. Erect Vision.—The fact that bodies are seen in their *erect* or natural position while their *optical images* on the *retina* (the immediate cause of vision) are inverted, is evidently due to the unconscious action of the judgment.

That *erect vision,* consequent on the formation of *inverted optical images* on the *retina,* is *not* due, as sometimes suggested, to the alleged *decussation* of its fibres on their way to the brain, is proved by the fact that if a person "stand on his head," or stoop down and view the landscape from between his legs, the head and eyes themselves being thus inverted, the surrounding objects are still seen in their *normal* or *erect* position.

498. Single Vision with Two Eyes.—But *one* object is ordinarily seen where but one object exists, though *two* optical images of the same (one on the *retina* of each eye) are *simultaneously* formed. This most probably arises from the fact that in such cases the *axes of vision* of both eyes being directed to the same point that the *two optical images* are formed on *corresponding* parts of the *two retinæ,* and that consequently the mind thus receiving *simultaneously two* nearly similar or identical *impressions* unconsciously *combines* them into *one perception.*

If, however, an object be viewed *simultaneously* with the two eyes, their *axes of vision not* being directed to the same point, as *squinting,* or when the movements of one of the eyes is checked by *pressing* heavily on it with one of the fingers, the two *optical images* of the object viewed will be formed on *different* parts of the two *retinæ*, and *two* objects will apparently be seen where *one* only exists.

By *corresponding* parts of the two *retinæ* is meant those parts of each *retina* which would correspond in position were they brought together, and placed the one over the other, like two saucers, the one resting within the other.

499. Double Vision with One Eye.—The *apparent* number of objects seen with *one* eye depends not upon the *number of objects* presented to it, but upon the *number of optical images* of these objects which are formed on the *retina* at the back of the eye. If, therefore, through any defect or injury two or more *optical images* should be formed of each object presented to it, the number of objects would be *increased* in the same ratio. It is in this way that multiplying mirrors and lenses increase the apparent number of objects seen through them.

EXPERIMENT.—Take a piece of thick card, or, still better, of tin-foil—prick two very small holes *close together* in it—hold a small object, as a very small bright steel bead or pin-head, behind and near these holes—when properly adjusted and looked at from the right distance through these holes, *two* pin-heads will be seen. This arises from the light reflected from the pin's-head being divided and bent round (*diffracted*) by the edge of the card, so that the pencils of light reflected from the pin-head are split up into *two* portions, each of which forms a distinct *image* on the back of the eye.

500. A Phosphene is the luminous image produced by pressure on the retina; it may readily be produced by pressing forcibly with the finger on the outside of the eye. A blow on the eye, a prick on the retina, or the passage of an electric current through the eye, gives rise to the sensation of flashes of light.

501. Purkinje's Figures are the *reddish* diverging lines and cup-shaped disc on a dark back-ground, best seen where a small but bright light is held (in a dark room with dark walls), close to the outer side of one of the eyes, so that its rays shall pass into the eye very *obliquely*. The cup-shaped disc-like appearance is produced by the *yellow spot;* the *red-*

dish lines are the *shadows* of the *blood-vessels* of the retina.

502. **The Adjustment of the Eye** is the process of adaptation by which it is enabled to see *small* and *near* objects, or *large* and *distant* ones. Hold *two* objects, a *small* and *near* object and a *larger* and more *distant* one, before the eye, and nearly in a line with each other. It will be observed that, if the *near* one is seen *distinctly*, the more *remote* one will be seen much less perfectly, and *vice versa.* The adjustment necessary to see either one or the other object distinctly is effected by the *ciliary muscle.* This muscle, by its *contraction*, as in viewing small or near objects, acts *indirectly* on the lens, making its front surface rounder and the lens itself *thicker.* By its relaxation it *indirectly* causes the lens to become *flatter* and *thinner* as when we view more distant or larger objects.

503. **The Ciliary Muscle** is a *ring* of unstriped muscular fibre, which is attached to the front edges of the *ciliary processes* of the choroid coat by the *ciliary ligament.* The lens is supposed to be stretched, pulled out, or flattened by the *tension* of these processes which encircle its rim; when the *ciliary muscle contracts*, it overcomes this tension, and the elasticity of the lens, causing its sides to spring out, makes it thicker (*rounder* in form), and *shorter* in *focus;* when the *ciliary muscle relaxes*, the tension exerted by the *choroid* coat immediately stretches it out to its previously flattened shape.

Images (as of the flame of a candle) *reflected* from the *front* of the *lens* show that such changes in its *form* do really take place during the process of adjustment.

504. **The Muscles of the Eye-Ball** by which the eyes are rolled about and the *axis of vision* is moved in any given direction, consist of the four *recti* (straight) muscles by which the eye is rolled inwards, outwards, upwards, and downwards, the *superior oblique* pulley or *trochlearis* muscle, and the *inferior oblique* muscle by which the eye is *rolled on its axis* at the same time that it is pulled *inward*

and *forward*. The *two oblique* muscles are attached a little behind the centre on the *outer* side of the eye-ball,

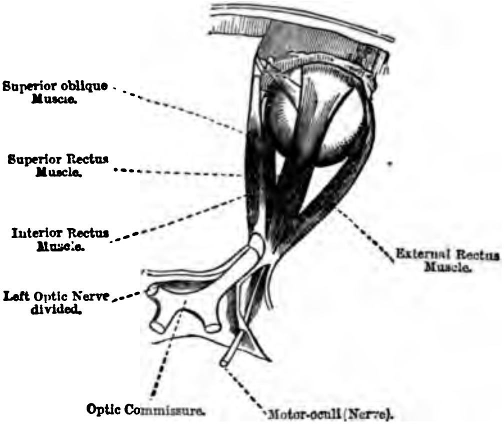


Fig. 87. The Muscles of the Eyeball (seen from above).

and thus give it their peculiar movement. The tendon of the *trochlearis* muscle passes through a tendinous *pulley-like* loop, and bends downwards so as to act on the eye-ball like a cord from a pulley. The following are the names and functions of the muscles:—

1. Superior rectus (*attolens*) muscle, pulls the eye-ball upwards.
3. Inferior rectus, „ „ „ downwards.
3. Internal rectus (*adductor*), „ „ „ inwards.
4. External rectus (*abductor*), „ „ „ outwards.
5. Superior oblique (*trochlearis*), rotates the eye outward and downward.
6. Inferior oblique, rotates the eye outward and upward.

505. The Chief Appendages of the Eye are the eyebrows, eyelids, conjunctiva, and the lachrymal apparatus.

506. The Eyebrows are the arched integumentary prominences which project over the upper part of the front of the orbits. Among their other offices they shade and protect the eyes, and with the aid of the short thick hairs with which they are studded, prevent the perspiration from running into them.

507. The Eyelids consist of thin plates of movable cartilage surrounded by folds of skin. Each of their *free* edges is fringed with a row of hairs (the eyelashes), and contains a row of from 20 to 30 minute glands termed the *Meibomian glands* (see fig. 86), which consist of modified *sebaceous glands* embedded in grooves in the cartilage. Each of these glands consists of a single closed straight tube of *basement membrane,* into the sides of which a number of minute follicles open; the interior of the gland is lined with scaly epithelium. The *upper* eyelid is *raised* by the contraction of a special muscle termed the *levator palpebrarum superioris.* The eyelids are *closed* by the contraction of a sort of *sphincter* muscle termed the *orbicularis palpebrarum* muscle.

508. The Conjunctiva is the *mucous* membrane which first lines the interior of the eyelids and is then reflected over and lines the front of the eye-ball.

509. The Lachrymal Glands consist of two small *racemose* glands (each about the size of an almond), lodged in depressions at the upper and outer angles of the orbits (see fig. 88). They secrete the *lachrymal* fluid which *moistens* and *lubricates* the front of the eye, and which passes off from the inner angles of the eye by the *lachrymal* and *nasal* ducts into the nose. When secreted in very large quantities, as during certain kinds

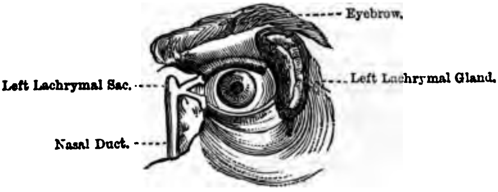


Fig. 88. Lachrymal Gland.

of mental excitement or in consequence of the action of *irritants,* a part of it escapes as *tears* down the cheeks.

CHAPTER XX.

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM—INNERVATION.

510. **The Nervous System** consists of the cerebro-spinal axis which comprises the *brain, medulla oblongata, spinal cord,* and the *cerebral* and *spinal* nerves, and of the *sympathetic, ganglionic,* or *organic nerve* system.

511. The *brain* and *spinal* cord are *enclosed* in three coverings, viz.:—the *pia mater* or inner *vascular* membrane, the *arachnoid* (serous) membrane, and an *outer* tough fibrous membrane termed the *dura mater.* The *arachnoid* and *sub-arachnoid spaces* are filled with the *cerebro spinal fluid,* which aids in *protecting* the brain and spinal cord. This fluid is secreted by the arachnoid membrane.

The *pia mater* adheres to the brain, following and dipping into its external *sulci* or furrows. The *arachnoid membrane* covers the brain and *pia mater* without following or dipping into the sulci.

512. **Innervation.**—The various functions of the nervous system constitute that of *innervation,* and consist in the generation and transmission of *motor impulses* (sec. 419), of sensation, and of thought, volition, and emotion. For every act of innervation—that is, for every idea thought, every emotion excited, every sensation felt, *brain tissue* is *burnt* or *oxidized.*

513. **Sensation** is the process by which we become *conscious* through the *brain* of *impressions* received and transmitted to it by the *afferent* or *sensory* nerves (sec. 532). When sensation is excited *normally*—that is, by *external* agency—it is termed *objective* sensation; but when it arises without any *external* cause, that is, is produced by the unprompted or rather *intrinsic* action of the brain or nervous system itself—it is termed *sub-*

jective sensation, as in the case of the "ringing in the ears" sensation with which most are more or less familiar. Sensation requires—

(1.) A suitable medium for *receiving* the external impression or stimulus—as the eye to receive light.

(2.) A means of *transmitting* the impression to the brain—as the optic nerve.

(3.) Brain organization to develop *consciousness* of impression.

514. The Brain or Encephalon.—The principal parts of the brain are the *cerebrum* or brain proper, the *cerebellum* or lesser brain, the *pons Varolii* and the *medulla oblongata.* It also contains a series of *ganglia* at its base—viz., the *corpora striata, optic thalami* separated from each other by the third ventricle, *corpora quadrigemina,* the *pineal gland,* and the *pituitary body* the functions of which are not all understood. It also con-

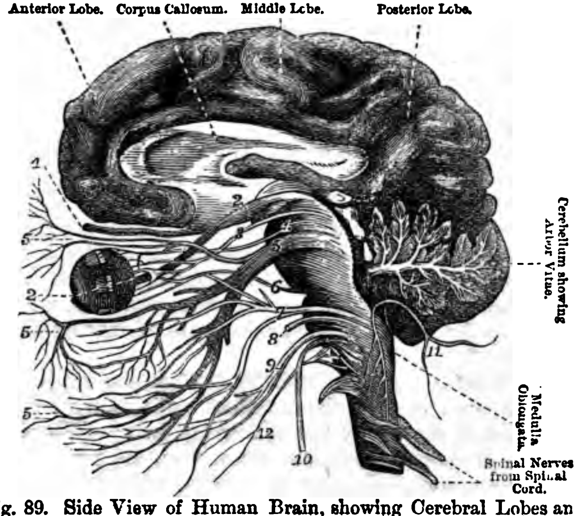


Fig. 89. Side View of Human Brain, showing Cerebral Lobes and Cranial Nerves (of Right Hemisphere), Cerebellum, Medulla Oblongata, and Corpus Callosum.

The observer is supposed to be looking at the right side of the great Longitudinal Fissure, and the *cut* portion of the *Corpus Callosum.*

tains *fissures* or *cavities* within or at its base termed *ventricles.*

The average weight of a man's brain is 54 ounces, and that of a woman's 45 ounces. The maximum weight known is 64 ounces.

515. **The Cerebrum** or principal mass of the brain is divided by the great *longitudinal fissure* into two hemispheres—each hemisphere is again divided into three lobes—anterior, middle, and posterior—the anterior lobe lies in front of the fissure of Sylvius, the posterior lies over the *cerebellum,* and the middle lobe between the two.

Its outer or *cortical* portion consists of *gray nerve vesicle* which gives it a pinkish or "*cineritious*" appearance. Its *inner* or *medullary* portion consists of tubular *nerve fibre.*

The two hemispheres are connected by a *commissure* consisting of white nerve fibre, termed the *corpus callosum.*

The *surface* of the *cerebrum* is *convoluted,* the sulci or *fissures* being about an inch deep. The object of these convolutions is apparently to increase the surface of the brain and the consequent quantity of gray *vesicular* or *cortical* matter in which the generation of the nervous or mental force seems to reside. In any case it would seem that the fewer the number of *convolutions,* and the less deep the *sulci,* the lower the scale of intelligence of the animal.

516. **Function of the Cerebrum.**—That the *cerebrum* is the principal seat of the intellect, volition, and of the emotions, is shown by the following facts:—When the human *cerebrum* is below a given size, its possessor is always an *idiot. Disease* or *injury* produces *idiocy* or *insanity.* The *size* of the *cerebrum,* its quality being equal also, bears some proportion to the *mental power* of the animal.

That these powers are derived from the *cortical* or *external vesicular* structure is additionally shown by the fact that in serious slow-growing disease affecting the whole of the brain, that if the disease *first* attack the white internal *medullary* portion, that the power of *muscular control* and movement is *first* lost, the *intelligence* being affected *last*, whereas if the *cortical* part of the brain becomes first diseased the *mind* of the patient is first affected, he either becoming *maniacal* or *demented*. If the *cerebrum* be removed from a pigeon or other animal that can stand the *nervous* shock incurred in its removal, it will live and move but will show no signs of *consciousness* or *intelligence*.

Poisons as alcohol, opium, &c., which act upon the *cerebrum*, also produce temporary insanity or *loss* of *intelligence*, or of *consciousness*.

517. The Cerebellum or lesser brain, situated at the base of the back of the skull, is separated from the cerebrum by the *tentorium*, a process of the *dura mater* which lines the inside of the skull, forming a *floor* for the cerebrum, and a *roof* for the cerebellum. It consists of alternate *laminæ* of white and gray nerve matter which, when cut *perpendicularly*, presents a peculiar *arborescent* appearance, termed the *arbor vitæ* of the *cerebellum*. Its weight is about $\frac{1}{10}$ of that of the whole brain. (See fig. 89.)

Its function is not fully known: it however in some way or other regulates and co-ordinates muscular movement. If removed from the head of a pigeon, the pigeon will continue to move backward or round and round, having apparently lost all power of regulating its movements.

518. The Pons Varolii, or bridge of Varolius, is the *commissure* which connects the cerebrum, cerebellum, and medulla oblongata together. It consists mainly of white nerve fibre.

519. The Cranial or Cerebral Nerves are the twelve pairs of nerves which are given off from the *brain* or the *medulla oblongata*, and which pass out of nine foramina (apertures) at the base of the *cranium* (skull). The cranial nerves are *numbered* from *before backwards*, according to the order in which they pass out of the skull. The special names, numbers, functions, and distribution of these nerves are given in the following table:—

Table of the Function and Distribution of the Cerebral Nerves.

Pair.	Special Name.	Distribution.	Function.
1st.	Olfactory nerves.	To the *upper* part of the *mucous* membrane of the nose.	Sensory (smell).
2nd.	Optic nerves.	To the inside of the eye-balls.	Sensory (vision).
3rd.	Motores oculi.	To the superior, inferior, and internal rectus muscles of the eyes, and to the elevator muscle of the upper eyelid, and to the *iris*.	Motor.
4th.	Trochlear nerves.	Superior oblique trochlearis muscle.	Motor.
5th.	Trigeminal or trifacial nerves.	From the fourth ventricle, by three divisions, to the eye-ball, orbit, lachrymal gland, skin of the face, muscles of the jaws, and front of the tongue (taste).	Mixed (motor and sensory).
6th.	Abducens nerves.	External rectus muscle of the eye.	Motor.
7th.	Facial nerves, sometimes described as the *portio dura* of the seventh pair.	To nearly all the muscles of the face.	Motor.
8th.	Auditory nerves, sometimes described as the *portio mollis* of the seventh pair.	To the various parts of the labyrinth or inner ear.	Sensory (hearing).
9th.	Glossopharyngeal.	To the tongue and soft palate (taste), and to the pharyngeal muscles.	Mixed (motor and sensory) taste and common sensation.
10th.	Pneumogastric nerves (par vagum).	To the mucous membrane and the muscles of the pharynx, the larynx, and the trachea, and to the lungs, the liver, the stomach, and the heart.	Mixed (sensory and motor).
11th.	Spinal accessory nerves.	From the spinal marrow to the muscles of the neck and back.	Motor.
12th.	Hypo-glossal or *lingual* nerves.	To the muscles of the tongue.	Motor.

The *seventh* and *eighth* pairs of nerves leave the cranium by the same apertures; they have therefore, by some writers, been counted as but one pair, viz., the *seventh*. For a similar reason, the *eleventh* and *twelfth* pairs are also sometimes counted as one pair.

520. **The Medulla Oblongata** is the *cranial* portion of the *spinal* cord. The general distribution of its gray and white matter is similar to that of the spinal cord proper. (See secs. 524-7.) It is of a pyramidal shape, about 1¼ inches long, ¾ inch wide at its broadest part, and ½ inch thick. It, like the spinal cord, is divided into two lateral halves, each of which again is divided into *three* columns.

The nerve *fibres* from the opposite sides or halves of the *medulla, decussate* or cross over to each other, therefore it follows that in certain cases injury to one side of the head will produce paralysis on the other side of the body.

521. Injury to the Medulla Oblongata, which is the *nervous centre* of the *respiratory* movements, and in which all the *true* cranial nerves originate, may, by arresting its reflex action, produce death by suffocation. Irritation or injury of the medulla, or of the roots of the *pneumogastric* nerve, may cause death by stopping the action of the heart. (See sec. 213).

522. The general *functions* of the medulla oblongata are very similar to, but more important than those of the spinal cord.

Its *reflex* action takes place through its *gray* or *ganglionic* nerve matter.

523. **The Spinal Cord** is that portion of the *cerebrospinal axis* which is contained within the spinal column. It commences at the termination of the *medulla oblongata* and extends from the *foramen magnum* (the large aperture in the occipital bone at the base of the skull) to the *first lumbar vertebra,* where it terminates in the *cauda equina.* It is about 16 inches long, and weighs, with its nerves and investing membranes, about 1½ ounces. (See fig. 86.)

524. **Structure of the Spinal Cord.**—The spinal cord consists of a sub-cylindrical mass or bundle of *nerve fibres* enclosing *nerve vesicle.*

525. The *arrangement* of nerve *fibre* and *vesicle* differs from that of the *cerebral hemispheres,* the *nerve vesicle* occupying the *axis* of the cord, the *nerve fibre* its exterior or *cortical* portion.

When the spinal cord is cut through transversely, its *gray nerve matter* presents the form of two *crescentic* or half-moon shaped masses placed together back to back—that is, their *convexities* turned in, and their *concavities* turned *outwards.*

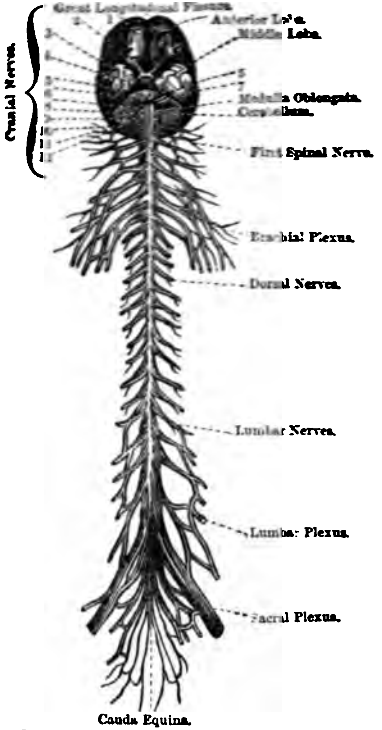


Fig. 90. Showing Human Brain (lower surface), Spinal Column, and Cranial and Spinal Nerves.

526. Each of these crescentic masses has two *cornua* or horns, an *anterior* and *posterior* cornu, which give off tubular nerve fibres which form the *roots* of the *spinal nerves.* The two *anterior* roots give off *motor* nerve fibres, the two *posterior* cornua give off *sensory* nerve fibres. (See figs. 90, 91.)

527. The fibrous portion of the spinal cord s made up of *longitudinal, transverse,* and *oblique* nerve fibre. Some of these fibres go *direct* to the brain, others first *decussate,* others again acting as *commissural* fibres unite the fibres from different parts of the body, or from different parts of the spinal cord. It is divided by two *longitudinal* fissures, the *anterior median* fissure and the ***posterior median*** fissure, into two ***lateral*** halves, a ***right*** and a ***left*** half. Each lateral half is again divided

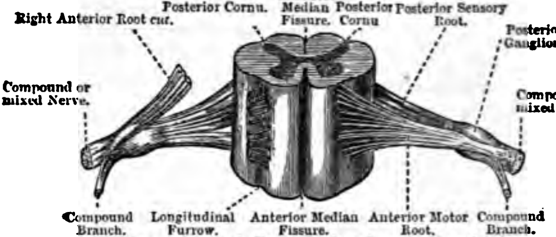


Fig. 91. Section of Spinal Cord. Showing grey and white matter, Anterior and Posterior Roots, Ganglia and Fissures.

into *three* columns—anterior, middle, and posterior—by the *longitudinal furrows* out of which the nerve fibres pass off on their way from the cornua to form the roots of the spinal nerves. (See fig. 91.)

529. **Membranes of the Spinal Cord.**—The spinal cord is retained in its place by the *denticulate* (toothed) *ligament* which passes *between* the roots of the *anterior* and *posterior* spinal nerves, and attaches it to the *dura mater* by about twenty tooth-like processes. The *dura mater* forms a tough loose *outer* sheath around the cord, the *pia mater* closely invests it, the *arachnoid* (serous) membrane intervenes between the two.

530. **Functions of the Spinal Cord.**—1. The spinal cord transmits the commands of the will directly from the brain to the voluntary muscles by the *motor* nerve fibres it gives off in the spinal nerves. 2. It transmits *sensory* impressions direct to the brain, where they excite consciousness, or *sensation.* 3. It receives sensory impressions by the sensory nerves which it does *not* transmit to the brain, but which, acting as a stimulus, cause *it* to send back *motor impulses* to the muscles which cause them to contract altogether independently of our consciousness, or of the brain. This constitutes *reflex* action. It is in this way that the various movements of digestion are carried on.

If a frog be *decapitated*, and its feet or legs be irritated by the point of a needle or a drop of acid, it will kick violently, and will even in some cases, where one leg only is irritated, bring or try to bring its other leg to aid the first in its attempt to get rid of the cause of irritation. In this case the *brain* and *medulla* being both removed, there can be no power of thought or consciousness left in the frog. These movements must therefore result from the *reflex* action of the spinal cord.

The *spinal cord* is thus an *independent* centre of *nervous* (*reflex*) *action*, in addition to being the medium by which the brain is brought into nervous connection with the rest of the body. This action is, as previously stated, due to its gray *vesicular* nerve-substance.

531. **Reflex, or Excito-Motor Action.**—If the spine be broken or injured, all parts of the body below the injury become *paralysed* (lose their power of sensation and voluntary movement). If a hot iron be applied to the feet in such a case, the legs will kick out violently, though the patient is quite unconscious of a sense of heat or pain, even tickling the feet will produce this effect.

The sensory (afferent) nerve fibres conduct the stimulus (the irritation) to the spinal cord, which immediately, as it were, *reflects* it back by the *efferent* nerves, in the shape of *motor* impulses, to the legs, which therefore kick unconsciously. *Coughing*, *sneezing*, *winking* when an object suddenly approaches the eye, *infantile convulsions*, tetanus (lock-jaw), the *peristaltic* movements of the stomach and intestines, are all so many cases of *reflex* action.

When, from long practice, certain movements at first requiring great attention, as those required in playing the violin or the pianoforte, or in painting a portrait, can be executed so easily that the musician or artist can talk and think freely on other subjects while at work, a sort of *artificial reflex action* has been acquired by education. Such operations may also be regarded as instances of *unconscious cerebration.*

532. **The Spinal Nerves** consist of the thirty-one *pairs* of nerves which pass off from the *sides* of the entire length of the *spinal cord* leaving the vertebral canal

by the *intervertebral foramina* (see sec. 67) on either side of the vertebral column.

Each spinal nerve arises by *two roots*, an *anterior* root, consisting of *motor* nerves, and a *posterior* root, consisting of *sensory* nerve fibres. The *two roots* on each side unite as they leave the spinal cord to form *single trunks*, which shortly subdivide, giving off smaller branches, which ramify through the system. The posterior, afferent, or *sensory* roots have ganglia. (See figs. 90, 91.)

533. Injury or Irritation of the Spinal Nerves.—If a trunk nerve be cut or injured just as it leaves the vertebral column, entire *paralysis* is produced, the power of *sensation* and *motion* being entirely lost to the parts to which the nerve is distributed. If the *motor* nerve only is cut *partial paralysis*, consisting in the loss of all power of *motion* is produced, sensation being retained. If a *sensory* root only is cut, the *paralysis* caused by the injury involves only the loss of the power of *sensation* of the parts to which its nerves are distributed.

If the *end* of a *cut* nerve trunk most *remote* from the spinal column be pinched, or irritated by an electric current from a galvanic battery, it will cause *muscular contraction* or *convulsion* of the parts in which the nerves from that trunk ultimately terminate; but if the *nearer* end to the spinal cord be pinched or irritated it will cause great pain.

If the spinal cord were to be divided *perpendicularly* down its chief fissure by a knife, sensation would be destroyed all over the trunk and limbs.

534. The Sympathetic Nerve System comprises—1. The *pre-vertebral* double chain of ganglia. 2. The *isolated* ganglia of the viscera, including the *cardiac* (see sec. 213), *hypogastric* and *solar* plexuses. 3. The *ganglia* on the *posterior* roots of the *spinal* nerves.

The *pre-vertebral* ganglia, which form the chief part of this system, consist of two parallel rows or chains of about thirty *ganglia*, situated on each side of the front of the spine. These double rows of ganglia unite together in a *ganglion*, termed the *ganglion impar*, opposite the *os sacrum*. These ganglia are connected with each other, also with the *spinal* nerves, and with the *isolated* ganglia, by means of *gelatinous* and *white nerve-fibre*. Many of these *nerve-fibres* originate in the sympathetic system, others, doubtless, in the spinal cord.

The *great solar* or *epigastric* flexus is situated in the abdomen behind the stomach and immediately in front of the aorta and about the coeliac axis.

The *hypogastric* or *pelvic* plexus is situated in the lower part of the abdomen, chiefly in front of the os sacrum and about the bladder and rectum. It supplies the viscera of the pelvic cavity.

535. The *sympathetic nerves* largely influence the *unstriped* muscular fibres in the walls of the *intestines* and the blood-vessels, and thus *regulate* nutrition (see sec. 225). Their *ganglia* are also probably sources of *reflex* action to these organs. Their *motor* nerves, as in the case of the heart (see sec. 213), are, however, under the control or influence of the *pneumogastric* or other *cerebral* or *spinal* nerves. The sympathetic nerve system, most probably to a great extent, though not exclusively, presides over, influences, and co-ordinates the various processes of involuntary motion, of secretion, and of nutrition, including the circulatory, respiratory, and peristaltic movements of the heart, lungs, stomach, and intestines.

APPENDIX.

HINTS FOR THE DISSECTION OF A RABBIT, AN OX OR A SHEEP'S EYE, A SHEEP'S BRAIN.

To Dissect a Rabbit.

Kill by *chloroform*, holding the head of the rabbit *firmly* in basin or gally pot, containing a piece of rag well saturated with the chloroform; dissect while warm before the adipose tissue (fat) hardens, and before *rigor mortis* sets in.

Lay the dead rabbit on its back, and spread out its legs on a large flat board, as a drawing or a chopping board, and pin or nail them down to the board, so as to fix the animal securely in this position, which is in general the most convenient one for the purposes of dissection. The principal veins are best shewn if the jugular vein is first injected with coloured size.

To *remove the skin* make an incision, in the skin only, at the top of the throat, cutting down along the middle line of the front of the body along the entire length of the chest and abdomen, taking great care *not* to cut *below* the skin—loosen the skin from its attachment by connective tissue to the muscular layer (the panniculus) below, by means of the handle of the scalpel or a paper knife. (The *Panniculus carnosus* is a muscle peculiar to quadrupeds.)

Remove the *panniculus*, and a white tendinous line, the *Linea Alba*, formed by the *aponeurosis* of the abdominal muscles, will be exposed.

To *open the cavity* of the abdomen, make a longitudinal cut with the scissors from the lower end of the *sternum* to the *pelvis*, through the aponeuroses of the abdominal muscles (the white line), taking care not to cut through into the smooth membrane (the *peritoneum*) below—make two lateral incisions with the scissors from the edge of the sternum, one on each side, along the line of the lower ribs, care being taken not to pierce or cut any of the adjacent organs or membranes—reflect back the two flaps of skin thus formed. The glistening transparent membrane below, through which the stomach, liver, and intestines may be seen, is the *peritoneum*. Remove the layer of peritoneum in front, insert the handle of the scalpel, or some other thin blunt instrument, between the *liver* and the *diaphragm*, and press the former gently down, the vault or concavity of the diaphragm will now be seen, through the transparent substance of which the distended lungs filling the cavity of the chest and pushing against the diaphragm, may be observed. If the diaphragm be punctured, a noise from the inrush of air into the chest will be observed, simultaneously the lungs will begin to contract from the external pressure of the air, so that they will no longer fill the entire cavity of the chest. The *small intestines* may now be gently raised, when the mode in which they are bound together and attached to the spine by the *mesentery* will be seen. The aorta, vena cava, hepatic artery and veins, bile duct, gall bladder, the phrenic nerve, and the suspensory ligament of the liver should also be observed.

To *remove the stomach, intestines, pancreas,* and *spleen,* tie a piece of strong silk or thread tightly round the duodenum just above the stomach, so as to close the tube, and thus form a close ligature, tie a second thread round the duodenum three-eighths of an inch above the former, thus forming a *double ligature;* proceed in a similar manner with the *rectum,* at about one inch from its termination—now make two cuts with the scissors, one between each of the double ligatures—the whole may now be removed (on cutting the various vessels and other connections by which they are retained in their place) for further special examination. The stomach, and the large and small intestines, may thus be removed so as to retain their contents for examination. On the removal of these organs, the position of the kidneys with their smooth shining surfaces, at the back of the abdominal cavity and outside the peritoneum, also their connection with the bladder by means of the ureters, will be observed.

To *examine the stomach* and the structure of its several coats, pin it to a large loaded cork or a piece of wood (previously loaded with lead), and examine it *under water,* making door-way or window-shaped incisions in its side so as to permit of its interior being seen as much as possible in its natural position.

To *examine the thorax* extend the incision already made, across the throat (taking care not to sever the trachea and blood-vessels), and turn the skin back on to the upper limbs, dissect away the *external* muscles (pectorals) of the chest—the intercostal muscles (between the ribs) will now be exposed. Clean away the fat and carefully separate the *front* of the diaphragm, by means of the scissors, from the sternum and ribs—make two cuts, also with a strong pair of scissors, through the junctions of the ribs and costal cartilages, then dislocate and pull the sternum back on to the face, so as to expose the heart, lungs, and contents of the chest. The *pleuræ* or serous bags enclosing the lungs and lining the chest, also the *pericardium,* the bag enclosing the heart should be opened and examined. The student should also examine the blood-vessels at the *root* of the heart and lungs, and the air-tubes going to the latter. The heart and lungs may be removed for examination by cutting through their roots, care being taken to make the incisions as far from the organs as possible.

TO DISSECT A SHEEP OR AN OX'S EYE.

Dissect off the muscles and the fat, and *fix* the eye as follows:—Fill a saucer half full of a semi-solid or nearly solid mixture of about equal quantities of solid paraffin (the paraffin of candles) and paraffin oil; press the eyeball, the pupil being placed upwards, half its depth into the mixture, and place the whole under water contained in a pie dish or any suitable vessel; or, pin the eyeball to a loaded cork placed under water so as just to cover the eye.

To remove the front half of the *sclerotic coat*, including the *cornea*, make a small nick in the middle of this coat *only*, about midway between the pupil and the optic nerve, by pinching up a fold between the fingers, and dividing it with a pair of blunt-pointed scissors—then introduce the end of a blow-pipe, and blow gently into it, so as to break down its delicate fragile connections with the *choroid coat.* The upper half of the sclerotic coat may now be removed by raising its sides gently, and pushing with the handle of the scalpel, gently against it at its connections with the *iris.* The rest of the eye may now be readily dissected away and examined separately. The coats should be separated and examined under water. A series of eyes may be fixed as described in various positions in order to get different sections of them. The eyes may also, if it be desired, be first hardened by immersion in alcohol (methylated spirits of wine is cheapest), or in a dilute solution of chromic acid—in the latter case a small nick should be made in the outer coat to allow the acid to enter more readily. A good *sharp* long-bladed penknife may be used in place of a scalpel.

TO DISSECT A SHEEP'S BRAIN.

To *remove the brain*, saw horizontally all round the top of the skull in a line from the middle or top of the occipital condyles to the frontal ridge in front of the top of the orbits. Take care not to saw quite through the bones—carefully wedge open by means of a screw-driver. Before attempting to remove the brain, examine the various exits of the cranial nerves, also the membranes of the brain and the medulla oblongata, and sever the connections where necessary.

Having removed the brain, immerse for a week or more in strong alcohol, by means of which it is *hardened*, so that smooth sections shewing the internal structure may be cut in various directions after having well observed its external configuration, fissures, convolutions, commissures, &c.

ADDITIONAL DIAGRAM. See Sections 259, 262.

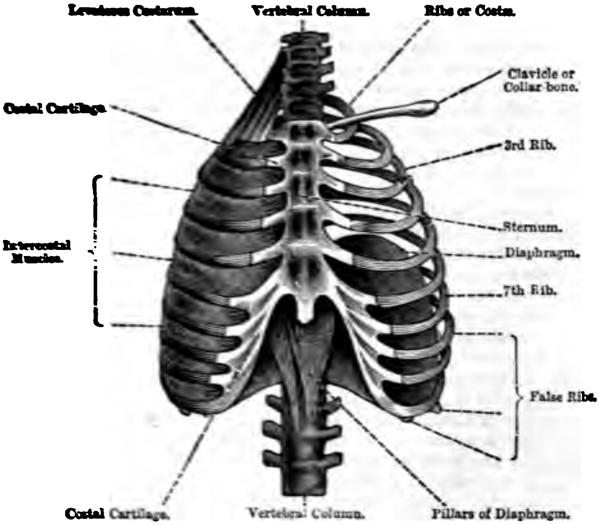


Fig. 92. Shewing the Thorax and its principal Muscles.

EXAMINATION PAPERS set by the Department of Science and Art at the May Examinations, 1870, 1871, 1872, and 1873.

SUBJECT XIV. — ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY.

Examiner— PROFESSOR HUXLEY, LL.D., F.R.S.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.

If the rules are not attended to, the paper will be cancelled.

You are permitted to answer questions from the elementary paper or from the advanced paper, but not from both.

In all cases the number of the question must be placed before the answer on the worked paper.

Three hours are allowed.

First Stage, or Elementary Examination.

INSTRUCTIONS.

You are permitted to *attempt* only *eight* questions.

You must *attempt* the first four questions on the paper. The remaining four you may select from any part of the paper; but a full and correct answer to an easy question will in all cases secure a larger number of marks than an incomplete or inexact answer to a more difficult one.

The value attached to each question is shewn in brackets after the question.

ELEMENTARY STAGE.—1870.

1. Describe the circulation of the blood. (16.)

2. When a piece of bread is eaten, what changes does it undergo in the mouth and the stomach? (16.)

3. When a man stands up, by what means is his body kept in that position? (16.)

4. What is the pupil of the eye? When does it become larger and when smaller? and how is the change in its size brought about? (16.)

5. What is the number of the teeth, and of what substances are they composed? (9.)

6. What is the pulse, and why is there usually no pulse in the veins? (9.)

7. What changes does the blood undergo in passing through the lungs? (9.)

8. How is the blood brought to the liver, and how carried away from it? (9.)

9. Where is the sense of touch most delicate, and how can its delicacy be roughly measured? (9.)
10. What is sweat, and how is it excreted? (9.)
11. Where is the medulla oblongata, and what are its most important functions? (6.)
12. Describe the minute structure of muscle? (9.)

1871.

1. Where are capillaries found? What is their structure, and of what use are they? (16.)
2. Give an account of the structure of any hinge-joint in the human body, and explain its action. (16.)
3. What is the nature of the gastric juice? On what parts of the food does it act? (16.)
4. What is meant by inspiration and expiration? How are they brought about? (16.)
5. What waste matters leave the body by the skin, what by the kidneys, and what by the lungs? (9.)
6. In what respect does the left half of the heart differ from the right? (9.)
7. What is a reflex action? Give examples of reflex actions. (9.)
8. Where is the bile formed? What becomes of it, and what are its uses? (9.)
9. What part of the retina is insensible to light? How can you prove that it is so? (9.)
10. What is the nature of the corpuscles of the blood? What are their uses? (9.)
11. Of what use are the valves in the veins? How can you illustrate their use on the living body? (9.)
12. What are tendons? Of what use are they? (9.)

1872.

1. Where are the mitral and tricuspid valves placed? What is their structure? Explain their action. (16.)
2. How is it that the temperature of the human body is about the same on the hottest day in summer and on the coldest day in winter? What is that temperature? (16.)
3. What is the structure of the diaphragm? What share does it take in the act of breathing? (16.)
4. What kind of actions is the spinal cord capable of performing in the absence of the brain? Give examples. (16.)
5. What is seen when any long bone, such as the femur, is sawn in the middle lengthways? How does the structure of the two ends differ from that of the middle, and why? (9.)
6. What is the crystalline lens? What is its use? When is its shape altered, and why? (9.)

7. What changes take place in blood shed into a basin from a living animal? (9.)

8. Describe what is seen when the web of a frog's foot is observed under the microscope. (9.)

9. How does the circulation in the kidney differ from that in a muscle? What is the use of the peculiar arrangement of the blood-vessels in the former. (9.)

10. How do the air-tubes end in the lungs? What happens when the air in the lungs cannot be renewed? (9.)

11. Why does a man fall down when he faints or is stunned? (9.)

12. By what means does the fat taken as food enter the blood? What changes does it undergo to enable it to do so? (9.)

1873.

1. Where is the stomach situated? By what passage does food enter the stomach? By what passage does food leave the stomach? What is the gastric juice? (16.)

2. What is a gland? Mention any two different glands and say where they are placed. (16.)

3. What is a muscle? How does a muscle cause one part of the body to move upon another? (16.)

4. Where are the lungs situated? What kind of blood is brought to them from the heart? What kind of vessel brings the blood to them? What is it called, and from what part of the heart does it arise? (16.)

5. What is to be seen in a drop of blood when it is examined under the microscope? (9.)

6. What do fresh nerve and tendon look like? How would you tell one from the other? (9.)

7. How many teeth has a child four years old? How many has an adult man? Mention the number of each of the different kinds of teeth in each case? (9.)

8. Where is the iris situated? What is its form? What happens to it when we pass from a dark room into a bright light, and from a bright light into a dark room? (9.)

9. What is a vertebra? What is its general structure? How many kinds of vertebræ are there? How are the "dorsal" vertebræ joined together? (9.)

10. Why is a meal of bread, meat, and potatoes, better than one of bread alone, or meat alone, or potatoes alone?

11. Explain as fully as you can what takes place when a person faints. (9.) (See *Glossary.*)

12. In what direction do the walls and the floor of the cavity of the chest move, when we draw a deep breath? Why do we draw a deep breath when we step into cold water? (9.)

GLOSSARY.

Abnormal, Out of the usual course of nature—irregular.

Acini, The small cluster-of-grape-like structures of Racemose glands, well seen in the Salivary glands.

Afferent, Conveying *from* the exterior *to* an interior centre.

Aliment, Food, any substance capable of being converted by *digestion* into *blood*, or of nourishing the body.

Alimentation, The various processes of digestion by which *food* is converted into *nutriment*.

Antiseptic, Opposing or counteracting *putrefaction*.

Anastomose, See Inosculate.

Aponeurosis, The pearly-white, glistening, fibrous membrane, which forms the *tendinous* termina of certain muscles, especially those of the abdomen.

Azotised, containing *nitrogen*.

Bifurcate, To divide (fork-like) into *two* branches.

Blastema, The *formative* matter of the blood and tissues; the protoplasmic portion of the liquor sanguinis by which the tissues are built up or repaired.

Buccal, Belonging to the cheek.

Calcium, The metal which, in combination with *oxygen*, forms the *earth* termed *lime*.

Calcified, Hardened by the deposition of *lime* or its compounds.

Cancellated, Lattice worked; consisting of minute cross-bars.

Cerebro-spinal system, That portion of the animal economy which comprises the brain, spinal cord, and the cerebral and spinal nerves.

Cervical, Belonging to the neck.

Cineritious, Having the colour or consistence of *ashes*.

Calyciform, Shaped like the *flower-cup* or *calyx* of a flower, applied to certain papillæ of the tongue.

Circumvallate, Consisting of a central prominence surrounded by a *trench-like* fissure, applied to certain papillæ of the tongue.

Centripetal, Tending *towards* the *centre*.

Centrifugal, Tending *away* from the centre.

Cognate, Connected or related in origin.

Coma, Insensibility, lethargy, profound stupor.

Congestion, An excessive accumulation of blood in the minute arteries and capillaries of an organ: it in general arises from the flaccid condition of the walls of the minute arteries due to the want of tonicity of their muscular fibre (see Vaso-motor nerves).

Corns, A growth of thickened *cuticle*, or thickened layer of epidermic cells; caused in general by the *irritation* of intermittent pressure over projecting bones.

Corpuscle, A microscopic body or particle; in physiology this term is in general restricted to the *discoidal* and *spheroidal* bodies which float in the *liquor sanguinis* and the lymph.

Correlation, The relation of mutual dependence of the one on the other, so that each shall be able to produce the other, either directly or through the medium of some other agent, as in the correlation of Light, Heat, Magnetism, and Electricity.

Cribriform, Perforated like a *sieve*.

Cutaneous, Relating to the skin.

Decussate, To intersect or cross over X like.

Diastole, The expansion or *dilatation* of the *cavities* of the auricles and ventricles of the heart and arteries on the entrance of the blood.

Differentiate, To develop from the same substance into new tissues or organs.

Efferent, Conveying *from* the centre *to* the surface or periphery.

Eliminate, To expel or throw out.

Epithelium, The layer of nucleated cells which forms the outside or *free* surface of the skin, and of mucous and serous membranes.

Excrementitious, Belonging to the evacuations, more especially those of the bowels or intestines.

Extravasate, To escape from the interior of a vessel into the surrounding textures.

Extra - vascular, A descriptive term usually applied to those structures, as the hair, nails, and epidermis, which do not contain capillary vessels.

Fæces, Excrement; the evacuations from the rectum, consisting chiefly of undigested food.

Farinaceous, Consisting of, or belonging to meal or flour ; starchy.

Filiform, Having the shape of a thread.

Fainting, Insensibility produced by temporary cessation of the action of the heart, caused through nervous shock, derived from emotional or brain disturbance, or through excessive weakness or loss of blood ; it is usually accompanied by great *pallor.*

False Nerves, A term sometimes applied to the *Olfactory* and *Optic* nerves, which really consist of processes of the brain itself and not of true *nerve fibre*—all the *true nerves* originate in the medulla oblongata.

Foramen, A hole or opening in any organ, or part, as the *foramen magnum* in the *occipital bone* through which the spinal cord passes out of the skull.

Foot-pound, The *quantity* of mechanical force necessary to raise one *pound* one *foot* high.

Fusiform, Spindle-shaped.

Ganglion, A knot-like mass of nerve tissue, or a knot-like expansion of a nerve.

Gluten, or Vegetable fibrin, Is the *nitrogenous* constituent of wheaten flour and bread. It is the grayviscid bird-lime-like substance which is left when a small quantity of wheaten flour is wrapped up in the form of a ball in a double-fold of fine calico, and kneaded under a tap of running water, until the water which passes through it ceases to be *opaque* or *whitish* from the presence of starch.

Hairs, A hair consists of a long cylindrical or slightly conical thread-like body. formed of modified horny epidermic cells (keratin). The hairs are inserted in folicles or indentations (*hair-sacs*) in the integument, and *grow* from minute bulbs (*hair-papillæ*) contained at the bottom of these *sacs.*

Each complete hair contains a *shaft*, a conical *point*. and a *root-sheath*, the latter forming the *whitish* expansion which adheres to, and *embraces* the surface of the hair-bulb or papilla.

The *shaft* consists of a *cortical* portion (an external tube of coalesced epidermic cells), and a *medullary* or internal portion, consisting of *loose* epidermic cells.

Halitus Vapour, breath.

Infundibulum. A funnel-shaped *sac* or *cavity*, as those of the *lungs* and the *kidneys.*

Inosculate (Anastomose), To unite by contact as by the mouth, or extremities of two vessels—this kind of union is well seen in the blood-vessels at the back of the hand.

Invertebrate, Having no spinal column or backbone.

Lamella (Lamina), A thin piece, layer, or plate of bone or other solid substance.

Linea Alba, The thin white tendinous or fibrous chord which extends from the end of the sternum along the middle of the abdomen to the pubes and attaches certain of the abdominal muscles to each other.

Lubricate, To make smooth or slippery through the medium of any oily or other substance.

Mediastinum, The space in the middle of the thorax contained between the two *pleuræ.*

Medullary, Pertaining to, or resembling marrow or pith, either in character or position.

Motor, A mover applied to the nerves which convey the *nervous impulses* that excite the muscles to movement.

Mucous Membranes, The membranes which line the mouth, lungs, stomach, and *open* cavities, and secrete a transparent viscid fluid termed *mucus.*

Nails, The laminated bodies which protect the back of the ends of the fingers and toes, and which indirectly, by the resistance they offer, increase the sensibility of the ends of the fingers. They consist of modified coalesced epidermic (horny) cells; they grow from the *matrix*, a very *vascular* layer of the *cutis* under the nail, and from their *edges.*

Nucleoli, The granules sometimes contained within a *nucleus.*

Nucleus, The small oval or round, solid or hollow (vesicular) body present during some period of their existence in most organic *cells.*

Objective, A term applied to sensation excited through the medium of an external agent.

Occipital, Belonging or relating to the *occiput*, or hind part of the skull.

Oleaginous, Fatty, oily, unctuous.

Ora serrata, A sinuous or toothed line, about one-third the distance back from the front of the eye, which forms the apparent termination of the retina.

Panniculus Carnosus, A thin muscle peculiar to quadrupeds, lying beneath the skin and covering most of the body.

Parenchyma, The peculiar texture or structure of an organ, as distinguished from the *matrix* or connective structure by which the former is supported.

Papilla, A minute eminence or prominence on the surface.

Peristaltic (Vermicular,) A term applied to the undulating, worm-like, contractile movement, by which the food is propelled through the stomach and intestines.

Plexus, A *net-work* of vessels or nerves.

Precipitate, To separate or throw down a substance in the form of a fine powder, or a jelly from the liquid in which it was *dissolved.*

Pulmonary, Relating or belonging to the lungs.

Prism, A piece of glass, usually having *three* flat sides, used for the separation (by *unequal refraction*) of the various coloured rays which enter into the composition of *white* or *solar* light.

Racemose, Arranged like clusters of grapes.

Radicle, The diminutive of radical, a root, applied to the *primitive lacteals* of the villi.

Ramify, To divide or spread out in branches.

Reflect, In anatomy, to turn or fold back a membrane on itself.

Reflex Action, The nervous action by which the *gray matter* of the spinal cord converts an *afferent* impression into an *efferent* impulse.

Refract, To bend the rays of light by causing them to pass *obliquely* from one transparent body through another.

Refraction, The process of *bending* the rays of light, as when they pass through lenses or through the *humours* of the eye, or whenever they pass *obliquely* from one transparent body into another.

Rhythm, Measured or proportioned movement.

Rhythm of Heart, The measured beating of the heart; it consists—1st, of a movement producing a *longish dull* sound; 2nd, a *short sharp* sound; 3rd, a pause, after which the movements and sounds are repeated as before; the pause occupies about the same time as the two contractions.

Roots of Spinal Nerves, The *motor* (anterior) and the *sensory* (posterior) branches which pass off from near the front and back of each lateral half of the spinal cord, and which form the *trunks* of the spinal nerves.

Rouleaux, Piles or rolls, as rolls of coins.

Sarcous, Relating to flesh or muscle; the *sarcous element* is the substance contained within the *sarcolemma* of muscular fibre.

Sapid, Having a taste.

Serolin, A peculiar *fatty* matter found in the blood.

Serous Membranes, The membranes which line the closed cavities of the body, as the *pleura*, *pericardium*, &c., and which secrete a thin *coagulable* fluid, termed *serous fluid*.

Serrated, Toothed like the edge of a saw.

Shortest possible course of the blood is the course taken by the blood which leaves the left side of the heart by the *aorta* and *coronary* artery, and returns to the *right* side by the coronary vein.

Sinus, A hollow cavity or canal.

Spectrum, The *optical* ribbon-like image consisting of the various coloured rays (red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet) produced by passing a narrow beam of light through a prism.

Stapedius Muscle, A muscle one end of which is attached to the *floor* of the tympanum, and the other to the orbicular bone; its contraction tightens the membrane of the *fenestra ovalis*, and thus lessens the extent of its vibrations; it also by its indirect action tightens the *membrana tympani*.

Stationary Air, The air which, under *ordinary* respiration, *remains* in the lungs, which moves up and down the bronchial tubes as the cavity of the chest dilates or expands, but does not actually leave the lungs; it consists of about 75 to 100 c. i. residual air, *and* 75 to 100 c. i. supplemental air.

Stethescope, A cylindrical or trumpet shaped instrument, solid or hollow, usually of wood, used for conducting sounds from the lungs, or the interior of the thorax, and other cavities of the body to the ear.

Structure, The arrangement or mode of building-up of the organic particles in a *tissue* or *organ*.

Subjective, A term applied to sensations excited *without* the agency of any *external* object, as "ringing in the ears," &c.

Systole, The *contraction* of the auricles and ventricles of the heart on the *expulsion* of the blood.

Tension, The tightness of a body or the degree to which it is stretched; the degree to which a body is excited.

Tensor tympani, A small muscle one end of which is inserted to the handle of the *malleus* and the other the bony wall of the ear—its contraction tightens the *membrana tympani*, also indirectly the membrane of the *fenestra ovalis*, and thus lessens the extent of their vibrations, especially in the case of very loud noise or concussion.

Tidal air, The air which leaves the lungs and is renewed during ordinary respiration.

Tissue, The *elementary structure* of an organ or part of the body.

Tonicity, The property of passive *contraction* inherent in living *healthy* muscular fibre.

Trigeminal or trifacial nerves. The fifth pair of nerves, so called because of its division into *three* branches, each of which is distributed to a different part of the face.

Turbinated, Spiral or twisted, top-shaped.

Uvula, The fleshy curtain which hangs down at the back glapedius muscle of the mouth from the border of the soft palate.

Vascular, Of or belonging to *vessels*, consisting of *vessels*.

Vascular system, That part of the animal economy which consists of the blood-vessels and their capillaries, together with the lymphatic capillaries.

Vermicular, (see Peristaltic).

Vertebrate, Having a vertebral or spinal column, or back-bone.

Viscera, The contents of the abdomen and thorax; the organs contained in the great cavities of the body.

Viscid, Glutinous, sticky.

Viscus, One of the viscera.

INDEX.

N.B.—The numbers refer to the respective SECTIONS.

A

ABDOMEN, 34, 37.
Abduction and Adduction, 417, 504.
Absorbents, 2, 24, 44.
Absorbent System, 341.
Absorption, by the Skin, 396; bands, 163.
Acetabulum, 68, 81.
Acromion, 71.
Adam's Apple, 443, 446.
Adipose Tissue, 135.
Admixture of Food, economical, 339.
Adjustment of the Eye, 502.
Air, cells, 250-251; composition of, 254; complemental, 280; expired and inspired, 254, 255; in the lungs, 282; pressure of, in the lungs, 243; stationary and tidal, 104; tubes, 245-249; residual, 278; tidal or breathing, 279; supplemental, 281.
Albumen, 105, 106.
Albinoes, 486.
Alcohol, 103, 119.
Alimentary canal, 293.
Alimentation, 292.
Ammonia, 95.
Amœba, 168.
Ampullæ, 471.
Amyloids, 115, 116.
Analysis of animal body, 88.
Anatomy, 124.
Animal heat, 92, 93, 257; generated, 287, 288; regulated, 289, 391.
Animal mechanics, 413, 439.
Aorta, 194, 214, 217.
Antagonistic muscles, 436.
Appendix, Pages 232-238.
Aqueous humour, 488; vapour, 23.
Arachnoid membrane, 511, 529.
Arbor vitæ, 517.
Areolar, cellular, or connective tissue, 132.
Arms and hands, 73.
Arteries, 152, 214-216.
,, structure of, 219-224.
Arterial blood, 153, 162, 239.
Arterial system of man, 214.
Artery, carotid, 217; coronary, 217; femoral, 214, 216; hepatic, 376; pulmonary, 196.
Articulations, 422.
Articular cartilages, 420.
Artificial digestion, 321; respiration, 283.
Arytenoid cartilages, 448.
Asphyxia, 28, 284, 285.
Astragalus, 81, 84, and fig. 20.
Atlas, 59, 432, and axis, 427.
Auditory canal, 468, 469, 476.
,, nerve, 467, 468, 474, 476, 519.
Auricles, 194, 195
Auriculo-ventricular openings and valves, 194.
Axis and Atlas, 66, 427.
Axis-cylinder, 146, 147.
Axis, the optic, 493, 495, 498.

B

BALL and socket joints, 74, 423.
Basement membrane, 316, 317.
Biceps muscle, 417, 434.
Bicuspid teeth, 301.
Bile, 377.
Bilin, 377.
Biology, 123.
Bladder, 401, 409.
Blastema, 114.
Blind spot of the retina (optic pore), 493, 494.
Blood, 152; affected by contact with matter. 183, 184; arterial and venous, 153, 162, 239; buffy coat of, 185; changes in, during respiration, 239; coagulation of the, 173-175, 179; cause of coagulation, 180-182; composition of the, 156; corpuscles of the, 154, 156, 157-161, 167; cupped appearance of, 186; source of loss and gain to the, 189; stains, detection of, 163; heavier than water, 153; purest in body, 407; transfusion of, 166; gases in, 187.

Blood-vessels, 44; functions of, 188.
Blow on the head, effects of a, 436.
Blushing, 232, 233.
Bone, 49-54; composition of, 51.
Bones, the, 48; classification of, 55; division and growth of, 56.
Bony labyrinth, 468.
Brain, 33; growing, 63; description of 514; waste of, 41; seat of sensation, 476, 479, 513; to dissect, see *Appendix*.
Bread, 339.
Breast-bone (sternum), 69.
Bright spot of Sömmering (Macula lutea), 495.
Bronchi, 245, 247.
Bronchial tubes, 245, 248.
Bronchitis, 272, 285.
Buccal glands, 297, 304.
Brunner's glands, 325.
Buffy coat, 185.

C

Cæcum, 330.
Calcis Os, 84; and fig. 20.
Camera obscura, 482.
Canals of the ear, 470, and fig. 83.
Canaliculi, 137.
Cancellated bone, 62, 137.
Canine teeth, 301.
Capillaries, 5, 152; chief agents of nutrition, 340; minute description of, 226; of lungs, 226; portal, 374.
Carbon, 97.
Carbonate of lime, 51.
Carbonic acid, 22, 23, 91, 97; excretion of, 22, 238, 254-257; source of, 257.
Cardiac aperture, 314.
Carneæ columnæ, 197, 198.
Carpal bones, 73, 77.
Cartilage, 52, 112; structure of, 136.
Cartilages, 48; costal, 259; articular, 420; of the larynx, 44, 449.
Casein, 105, 109.
Catarrh (common cold), 234.
Cell-wall, 363.
Cells, biliary (liver), 368.
Cholera, 234.
Chondrin, 105, 112.
Cerebellum, 517; figs. 1 and 89.
Cerebral nerves, 519.
Cerebration, unconscious, 531.
Cerebro-spinal axis, 149.
Cerebrum, 515, 516.
Change and waste, 16.
Changes, in respired air, 255.
" in the blood, 239.
Chest (thorax), 35, 36, 69, 259.
Cholesterine, 377.
Chordæ tendineæ, 197, 198, 203.
Chords, the vocal, 450-452.
Choroid coat, 486.
Chyle, 344, 349.
Chylification (intestinal digestion), 324.
Chyme, 320.
Chymification, 319.
Cilia, 131, 252; movements of, 413.
Ciliary ligament, 486; muscle and processes, 503, and fig. 86.
Circulation, 190, 191; evidence of in the living body, 236; in the kidneys, 406; liver, 191, 374.
Circuminduction, 423.
Cistern of the chyle (receptaculum chyli), 343.
Clavicle, 72.
Clot (crassamentum or cruor), 173.
Clothing, 291
Coagulation, 173-179; cause of, 180-182; accelerated and retarded by, 184.
Coats, of stomach, 316; of the arteries, 219-224; of the eye, 484-486, 491.
Coccyx, 68.
Cochlea, 474; functions of, 475.
Cœliac axis, 218.
Cold and warm-blooded animals, 291.
Colon, 331.
Colour, sensation, and theory of, 478, 479; blindness, 481.
Colours, complementary, 480.
Columnæ carneæ, 197.
Compass test, 399, 400.
Combination of actions, 440, 517.
Complemental air, 280.
Concha, fig. 83.
Condyles, 56, 74.
Congestion, 234.
Conjunctiva, 508.
Connective (areolar or cellular tissue), 132.
Consciousness, 513.
Consonants and vowels, how pronounced, 456, 457.
Contractility, 141.
Control over the heart, 535.
Convolutions of brain, 33, 515.
Cooking, 337.
Coracoid process, 71.
Cornea, 485.
Coronary arteries and veins, 217.
Corpora Arantii, 207; quadrigemina, and striata, 514.
Corpus callosum, 514.
Corpuscles of human blood, 154-161; 164, 167-170; lymph, 348.
Corpuscles ganglionic, 150; Tactile and Pacinian, 398.
Corti, fibres of, 474, 476.
Costæ or ribs, 70.
Course of blood through heart, 201, 202; air in breathing, 244; food, 294, 295; motor impulses, 529, 531; sensory impressions, 529, 531.
Crassamentum, 173.
Costal (pectoral) respiration, 263.
Coughing, 272.
Cranium, 33, 60.
Cranial (cerebral) nerves, 519.
Cribriform plate, 465.
Cricoid cartilage, 447.

n, 162-164.
petrosa, 140.
and laughing, 276.
llin, 110.
128, 389.
dermis or true skin), 390

D

, 29.
sation, 497, 520, 526.
ism, (colour blindness), 481.
ition (swallowing), 307-311.
e, 139.
s, 457.
yshire neck," or goitre, 411.
s (cutis), 390.
pment (origin) of blood cor-
les, 169.
ne, 116, 118.
is, 103.
agm (midriff), 261, 262.
le, 199.
on of liquids and gases, 104.
ibility of food (relative), 337.
ixed, 339.
ion, definition of, 292.
artificial, 321.
62.
tion, see *Appendix*.
l balance, 25.
chamber, 44.
tube theory of body, 45.
ng, act of, how performed, 312.
(tympanum) of the ear, 468.
epatic, 371; cystic; 370; com-
bile, 372; pancreatic, 383.
glandular, 360, 361; biliary, 369.
ss glands, 411.
num, 325.
ater, 61, 511, 520.

E

7, 475.
and swallowing, 298, 307.
nical admixture of food, 339.
t, chemical or ultimate, 89.
incidental, 101.
l, 138.
alon (brain), 514.
rdium, 209.
mph and perilymph, 471.
neter, 103.
nosis, 103.
mis (cuticle or scarf skin), 128,

se, effects of, 340.
osis, 103.
ities, 39, 80.
tis, 305, 309, 444.
description of, 449.
ial cells, 127, 252.
ium, 127-131; ciliated, 252;
lular, 359.
position of body in standing,
436.

Ether, luminiferous, 478.
Eustachian tubes, 305, 468; valve, 195, 204, 207.
Excitability, irritability, 149.
Excrementitious process, 377.
Excretion, 22, 351.
Excretory organs, 29.
Exercise, 288.
Expiration, 264, 265.
Extensors and Flexors, 417.
Eye, the, 482-495; adjustment of, 489, 502, 503; appendages of, 505.
Eyeball, the humours of the, 483, 488, 489, 490; muscles of, 504; nerves of, 519; a water camera, 482; to dissect, see *Appendix*.
Eyebrows, 506.
Eyelids, 416, 507.

F

FACE, 64.
Fæces, 324.
Fainting, see *Glossary*.
Falx, 61.
Fat-cells, 135.
Fats, 115, 120; digestion of, 295, 319.
Fascia, 143.
Fasciculi, 143.
Fauces, 296.
Feeling, loss of, 533.
Femoris, Os, 81.
Femoral arteries, 214, 216.
Fenestra rotunda, 469, 476; ovalis, 468, 469, 476
Fenestrated membrane, 131.
Fermentation, 119.
Fibres of Corti, 474, 476.
Fibula, 83.
Fibrillæ 144.
Fibrin, 105, 107, 178.
Fibrinogen, 176, 181.
Fibrous tissue, 132-134.
Flesh-forming (plastic) food, 335.
Flexors and extensors, 417.
Food, classification of, 335, 336; course of and changes in, 294, 295: definition of, 334; daily quantity required, 338; digestibility of, 337; the essential, 338; mineral, 336; plastic, 94; respiratory, 97, 119, 120; stuffs, how divided, 335, 336; vital, 336.
Foramen, obturator, 68.
,, magnum or occipital, 523.
Foraminæ intervertebral, 67.
Force of heat, 4, 17, 18; chemical, 4, 12, 21; selective, 362; vital, 12, 21; mechanical, 4, 9-13, 20.
Foot, the, 80, 84, 85, and fig. 20.
Frog, cilia in pharynx of, 252; circulation in foot of, 236; experiment with, 213.
Fright, 213.
Function, 122.
Fulcrum, 431.

G

Gains and losses of blood, 189, 364.
Gall-bladder, 373.
Galvanic current, 533.
Ganglia, 145, 151; of heart, 213; sympathetic, 535.
Ganglionic corpuscles, 145.
Gastric juice, 318; follicles or tubuli, 314, 317.
Gastrocnemius muscle, 418; 433.
Gelatine, 105, 111.
Gelatinous nerve fibre, 148.
Glands, 129, 352; classification of, 357; structure of, 353-361.
Glands, The, of Lieberkühn, 323, 325; buccal, 297, 304; Brunner's, 325; ductless, 411; lachrymal, 509; Meibomian, 507; parotid, 303, 385; Peyer's, 323; racemose, 353, 357, 385; sublingual, 303; sub-maxiliary, 353; sebaceous, 395; tubular, 357.
Glasses, convex and concave, 489.
Glenoid cavity, 71; ligament, 87.
Glisson's capsule, 365.
Globulin, 105, 110, 181.
Glomeruli, 406.
Glossopharyngeal nerve, 463, 519.
Gluten, 336, see *Glossary*.
Glottis, 440.
Glucose, 380.
Glycocholic acid, 377.
Glycogen, 364, 378.
Glycogenic function of the liver, proof of, 379.
Goitre, 411.
Goose-skin, 142.
Grinders (molars), 301.
Gum, 118.

H

Haematin, 105, 161, 162.
Haemoglobin, 161.
Hairs, see *Glossary*.
Hair follicles, 395.
Hand, 73, 78, 79.
Haversian canals, 137.
Head, 33.
Hearing, and organs of hearing, 467-476; modus operandi of, 476.
Heart, 192, 200; beating of the, 200; movements of, 199; rhythm, see *Glossary;* nerves of, 213; sounds, 210; structure, 193; course of blood through, 201, 202; control over, 213.
Heat, the generation of, 17, 11; formers, 116; latent, 289, 391; regulation, 18; heat forming (respiratory) food, 335.
Hepatic artery, 376; (portal) circulation, 191, 374; ducts, 369–372; veins, 375.
Hiccough, 275.
Hilus, the, of kidney, 402.
Hinge and pivot joints, 424-428.
Hints for lay students, 38.
Histology, 126.
Hoarseness, 452.
Hopping, 439.
Human body, divisions of, 32; section of, 44; structure and functions of, 32-40; waste and renewal of, 338; work and waste, 24; double tube, theory of, 45, 46.
Humerus, 74.
Humours of the eye, 483; aqueous, 488; crystalline, 489; vitreous, 490.
Hunger and thirst, 26.
Hydrogen, 92.
Hyoid (tongue) bone, 65, 446.

I

Ileo-cæcal valve, 327.
Ileum, 323, 327.
Iliac arteries, 216, 217.
Ilium, 68, fig. 12.
Images, 503; formation of optical, 482, 489, 493.
Immortality, 3.
Incisors, 301.
Incus, 467 ,468, 476.
Infancy, the bones in, 52.
Innominata ossa, 68.
Inhibitory influence of pneumogastric nerve, 213.
Inspiration, 262, 263.
Infundibula (air sacs), 249, 251; of kidney, 181.
Insertion and origin of muscle, 415.
Inspired and expired air, 254, 255.
Innervation, 512.
Insalivation, 302.
Intelligence and brain, 515, 516.
Intercostal muscles, 259, 262.
Interlobular veins, 367, 374.
Intermittent gains and losses of the blood, 189.
Intestines, 323.
Intra-lobular veins, 374, 375.
Iris, 487.
Irritability (excitability), 149.
Isinglass (gelatine), 111.

J

Jaws, the, 64.
Jejunum, 326.
Joints, 136, 422; ball and socket, 74, 423; hinge, 424, 425; pivot, 426–428.
Juice, gastric, 318; pancreatic, 384.
Jumping and leaping, 439.

K

Keratin, 105, 113.
Kidneys, 401–407; cortical structure of, 403, 405; medullary, 403, 404; shape and position of the, 402; lungs and skin compared, 393; irritation of nerves of, 407; circulation of blood in, 406.

L

LABIALS, 457.
Labyrinth, 468.
Lachrymal gland and sac, 509.
Lacteals, 333, 344.
Lactic acid, 109.
Lacunae, 137.
Lamina spiralis, 474.
Larynx, the, 305, 443–448.
Laughing, 276.
Legs, bones of the, 80.
Legumen, 109.
Lens crystalline, 489.
Levator muscles, 417.
Levatores costarum, 262.
Levator muscles of the eyelid, 507.
Levers, 431–435.
Levers of the body, 432–434.
Lieberkühn's glands, 323 325.
Ligaments, 48; cotyloid, 68, 133; description of, 87.
Ligamenta subflava, 67.
Ligamentum teres, 68, 81.
Light, 477; theory of, 478; duration of impressions of, 496.
Lights (lungs), 242.
Limbs, 39, 41, 42, 80.
Lime-water, 240.
Liquor sanguinis, 155, 156; properties of, 171; functions of 172.
Liver, 37, 364–376; cells, 368; ducts, 369–372; circulation, 191; lobes, 366; lobules, 367; nerves of, 381; sugar, 380; blood-vessels, 374-376.
Living body compared with steam-engine at work, 1, 4, 5, 6, 9, 13.
Locomotion, 39.
Loss and gain to blood, 364.
,, daily in relation to food, 338.
Lungs, 241, 243; capacity of, 282; kidneys and skin compared with, 393; blood-vessels of, 253; structure of, 241–243.
Lymph, 348.
Lymphatic vessels (capillaries), 344, 345; glands, 346; system, 341.

M

MACULA lutea (yellow spot), 495.
Malleus, 468, fig. 83.
Malpighian capsule, 405, 406; tufts, 405; pyramids, 402, 403.
Mammalia, blood corpuscles of, 159.
Man, erect position of, 39, 66, 436.
Marrow, 56.
Mastication, process of, 298.
Matter, whence gained, 189.
Mechanical force, 4, 9, 13, 19, 20.
Mechanical work of living man, 7, 8, 10.
Mechanics, animal, 20, 413, 439.
Mechanical movements of respiration, 258.
Modulla, or marrow, 56.
,, oblongata, 520-522.
Membrana tympani, 467-469.
Membranes, investing, 43; mucous, 43; of brain, 511; of spinal cord, 529; serous, 43, 421; synovial, 421.
Membranous labyrinth, 471, 473.
Mental emotions, 33, 516.
Mesenteric glands, 329, 347.
Mesentery, 329.
Metacarpal bones, 73, 78, 85.
Metatarsal, 85, fig. 20.
Micro-spectroscope, 163.
Mineral compounds, 102; food, 339.
Mitral valve, 194, 203, 204, 206.
Mixed diet, advantage of a, 339.
Molars, 301.
Mortification, 29.
Motion and locomotion, 39.
Motor impulses, 530, 531; nerves, 526.
Motores occuli nerves, 519.
Mouth, 296, 297.
Mucous membrane, 29, 43, 127, 314, 316.
Multiplying glasses, 499.
Muscles, 414; solid, 415; of eye-ball, 504; larynx, 444, 451; fibres of the arteries, 142; nomenclature of, 417.
Muscular fibre, 108; non-striated, 142; striated, 143, 144.
Muscular sense, 460.

N

NAILS, see *Glossary*.
,, and hair, see *Glossary*.
Nasal cavities and passages, 305, 464, 465.
Nerve cells or corpuscles, 150, 151.
Nerves, auditory, 467, 474, 519; cerebral (cranial), 519; facial, glossopharyngeal, 519; motor and sensory, 526, 531, 532; of eye, 519; of heart, 213; olfactory, 464, 465, 519; sensory or afferent, motor or efferent, 526, 531, 532; spinal, 532.
Nerve fibre, primitive, 146.
Nervous force, 21, 149; tissue, 145; velocity, 149; shock, 234-235, 436.
Nervous system and innervation, 510-535.
Neural tube, 45-47.
Neurilemma, 147.
Neurility (excitability), 49.
Neurine, 145.
Nitrogen, 94, 100; starvation, 339.
Nitrogenous food, 94; principles, 105.
Nose, 465.
Nucleated cell, 127, 130, 150.
Nutrition, 340, 362.
,, of tissues, 29, 348, 535.

O

OATMEAL, 10.
Œsophagus, 306.
Odontoid process, 427.
Occipital bone, 60.
Old age, bones in, 53.

Olfactory chamber, 465.
,, nerves, 464, 465.
Optic axis, 493, 495.
,, nerve, 478, 482, 483.
,, thalami, 514.
Organ, 88, 121.
Organized body, 121.
Organogens, 90.
Orbicularis muscle, 416.
,, palpebrarum, 416, 517.
,, iris, 415
Organic (involuntary) muscular fibre, 221.
Origin and insertion of muscle, 415.
Osmosis, 103.
Otoconia, 472.
Otolithes (octoconia), 472.
Oxidation or combustion, 91, 237, 257, 287.
,, probable cause of smell, 464.
,, cause of sensation and thought, 512.
Oxygen, 16, 21, 100, 153.
,, part played by, in living body, 237.
,, carriers, 257.
,, Gas, properties of, 91.
,, ,, injestion of, a condition of life, 27, 28.
,, ,, in feeble chemical union with the blood, 165.

P

Pacinian and tactile corpuscles, 147.
Palate, 296.
Pallor, 235.
Pancreas (sweetbread), 382.
Pancreatic juice, 384.
Papillæ of the skin, 397, 398.
,, of tongue, circumvallate, filiform, fungiform, 463.
Paralysis, 531, 533.
Pathology, 125.
Patella, 80, fig. 19.
Pelvis, 68.
Pepsin, 318.
Peptone, 318.
Pericardium, 193, 208.
Perilymph and endolymph, 471.
Periosteum, 57, 133.
Peristaltic contraction, 315, 531.
Peritoneum, 328.
Perspiration, 23, 392.
,, quantity of, 393.
Phalanges, 73, 79, 86.
Pharnyx, 244, 305.
Phosphate of lime, 51.
Phosphates, 102.
Phosphenes, 500.
Phosphoric waste, 410.
Physiology, 125.
,, cognate sciences with, 31.
Pia mater, 511, 529.
Pigment cells, 128, 486.
Pillars of the diaphragm, 261.
Pineal gland, 514.
Plasma, 171, 172.
Pleura, 259, 260.
Pleurapophyses, 47.
Plexuses, 526, see *Glossary*.
Pneumogastric nerve, 213, 519.
Pons Varolii, 513.
Portal circulation, 191.
,, vein, 295, 374.
,, canal, 365.
Prehension, 39, 40.
Pronation, 430.
Processes, 58.
Pores of the skin, 391.
Proteids, 105, 111, 114, 294, 295, 339.
,, necessity for, 338, 339.
Protoplasm or bioplasm, 114.
Proximate or organic principle, 88, 105.
Pulmonary arteries, 214.
,, capillaries, 226, 257.
Pulse, arterial, 211, 212; venous, 220.
Purest blood in body, 407.
Putrefaction, 99.
Pus, 183.
Purkinge's figures, 501.
Pylorus, 322.

R

Racemose glands, 353, 357, 385.
Radius, 76.
Receptacle of the chyle, 343.
Rectum, 323.
Red corpuscles of the blood, 157-161.
,, functions of, 164.
Reflex action, 272, 522, 530, 531.
Refraction, 482.
Renal apparatus, 401, 409.
Reparation, 14, 15.
Reproduction, 30.
Residual air, 278.
Respiration, 23, 238, 239.
,, costal (pectoral), 266.
,, diaphragmatic (abdominal), 267.
,, different in the two sexes, 267.
,, frequency of, 277.
,, mechanical movements of, 258.
,, artificial, 283.
,, mechanism of, 258, 259.
Respiratory sounds, 286.
Rete mucosum, 389.
Retina, 491.
Ribs (costæ), 70.
Rigor mortis (death stiffening), 144.
Rods and cones of retina, 492.
Rotation and circumduction, 423, 426.
Rouleaux of corpuscles, 158.
Running and walking, 437, 438.

S

Sacrum, 68.
Saliva, 304.
Salivary glands, 297.

Salivary, description of, 303.
„ minute structure of, 385.
Sarcode, 114.
Sarcolemma, 144, 337.
Scalæ media, tympani, vestibuli, 467, 469, 474.
Scapula, 71.
Scarf-skin (cuticle), 389.
Sclerotic coat, 482-484.
Sebaceous glands, 395.
Secretion, 350.
„ theory of, 363.
Secretory glands, 350.
Self-repair, 14, 15.
Semicircular canals, 469; description of, 470, and fig. 83; valves, 207, 229.
Semi-lunar valves, 194, 204, 207.
Senses, the structure of organs of, 458; number of, 459.
Sense, muscular, 460; touch, 461, 462; taste, 463; smell, 464; hearing, 467; vision, 478, 479.
Sensation, 458; definition of, 513; of colour, 479; and judgment, 461, 498.
„ objective and subjective, 513; due to brain change or molecular movement in, 479.
Sensibility, compass test of, 399, 400.
Sensory nerves, 526, 531, 532.
Serosity, 177.
Serous fluid, 208; membrane, 29, 127; coat, 316.
Serum, 176.
Sesamoid bones, 73.
Sheath, 143, 144, 147, 337.
Shock, electric, 215; nervous, 234, 235, 436.
Sinews, 418.
Sighing, 269.
Sight, 478; long and short, 489.
Skeleton, the, 48.
Skin, 386-391; functions of, 387; lungs and kidney compared, 393; papillæ of, 397, 398.
Skull, 47, 60.
Smell, the sense of, 464.
Sonorous vibration, 466, 476.
Sneezing, 273.
Snifting, 270.
Snoring, 268.
Sobbing, 274.
Sound, nature of, 466.
Sounds, respiratory, 280; of the heart, 210; vowel, 456; consonantal, 456; gutteral, 457; dentals, 457.
Spectro-microscope, 163.
Speech, 442.
Sphincter or orbicular muscle, 314, 322, 332, 409; description of, 416.
Sphygmograph, 211.
Spinal, column, 66; cord, the, 35, 151; description of, 523-529; membranes of, 529; functions of, 530; nerves, 532; injury to, 532, 533; ganglia of, 532.
Spleen, the, 412.
Squinting, 498.
Stapes, 467, 468, 476.
Starch, 117, 302.
Stationary air, 104, see *Glossary*.
Steam engine, difference between living body, 12-15; governor of, 5.
Sternum (breast bone), 69.
Stimulus or irritation, 149, 476, 473, 513.
Stomach, 313-316.
Substance, loss of, 338.
Sudoriparous (perspiration) glands, 390, 391.
Suffocation, 98, 284, 285.
Sugar, 119; in liver blood, 379, 380.
Supination, 429.
Supplemental air, 281.
Supporter of life, 91.
Supra-renal capsules, 402, 411.
Surface articular, 67.
Suspensory ligament, 489.
Sutures, 63.
Sweat-glands, (sudoriparous), 390, 391.
Sweet-bread (pancreas), 382.
Sympathetic ganglia, nerves, and system, 5, 534, 535; nerve of neck, 233.
Synovia, 421.
Synovial sacs, 421.
Syntonin, 105, 108, 144.
Systole, 199.

T

Table of composition of human blood, 156.
Tactile corpuscle, 147, 398.
Tadpole, circulation in tail of, 236.
Taste, 463.
Taurocholic, acid, 377.
Tears, 509.
Teeth, 48, 299; permanent and milk (deciduous), 301; structure of, 300.
Telegraph wires, 41, 149.
Tendons, 133, 418.
Tentorium, 61, 517.
Temperature, average, 290; effects of, on the blood, 290, 391.
Theology and Physiology in harmony, 23.
Tibia, 82.
Thoracic duct, 342.
Thorax, 35, 36, 69; structure of, 259.
Thought, 33, 512; intelligence, 510.
Thymus gland, 411.
Thyroid cartilage, 440.
„ gland, 411.
Tibia, 82.
Tickling, 531.
Tidal and stationary air, 104.
Tissue formers, 335.
Tissues, 88; connective, white fibrous, 111, 132, 133; yellow, 134; adipose, 135; osseous, 137; minute structure of the tooth, 139; nerve, 145, 146.

Tongue, 463.
Tonicity, 225.
Tonsils, 296.
Touch, 461; compass test for, 399, 400.
Trachea, 245, 246.
Transfusion of blood, 166.
Trapezium, 432.
Tricuspid valve, 194, 203-205.
Tripod of life, 29.
Trunk, organs of, 35.
Tubuli (gastric), 314, 317; uriniferi, 404, 405.
Turbinal bones of nose, 5.
Turkish bath, 289.
Tympanum (drum of ear), 468.

U

ULNA, 75.
Urea, 95, 393, 406, 410.
Ureter, 401, 408.
Urethra, 409.
Unconscious voluntary action, 436.
Uric acid, 410.
Urine constituents, 394, 410.
„ daily quantities, 410.
Uvula, 268, 296.

V

VALVES of the arteries, 197; heart, 194, 203, 204; veins, 229.
Valvulæ conniventes, 323, 325.
Vasa vasorum, 231.
Vascular system, see *Glossary*.
Vaso-motor nerves, 225.
Veins, 152; descriptions of, 227, 228; hepatic (lower), 375; portal, 374.
Velum, 466.
Velocity of nerve force, 149; mechanical; gained at expense of power, 435.
Vena cava, 227.
„ porta, 295, 374.
Venous pulse, 230; blood, 153, 162, 239; sinuses, 61.
Ventricles, 196, 197.
Vermiform appendix, 330.
Vertebra, 67.
Vertebræ, typical, 46, 66.
Vertebral column (see spinal column).
Vertebrated animals, blood corpuscles of, 159.
Vestibule, 469.
Vibration of air, 440; of ether, 478, 479.
Villi, 333.
Vision, erect, 497; single, with two eyes, 498; double, with one eye, 499.
Vitreous humour, 490.
Vocal chords, 440, 444; false, 452; description of, 450-452.
Vocalization, position of, 455.
Voice, 440.
Voice and speech, 440-442; falsetto, 453; loudness, 454; modulation of, 453, 455; quality of, and range of, 453; breaking of, 453; essentials to, 455.
Voluntary muscle, 143, 144, 436.
Vowel sounds, 456.

W

WALKING and running, 437, 438.
Walls of the heart, 195, 196.
Waste, 16, 22, 23.
„ through the lungs, proof of, 240.
Water, 93.
Wave-movement, 478.
Whipped blood, 166.
White corpuscles, 167-170.
Windpipe, 245, 246.
Work and waste, 24.
Working of the heart, 199, 200.
Wounds, 183; in veins, 228.

Y

YAWNING, 271.
Yellow fibrous tissue, 134.
Yellow spot (Macula lutea, or Bright spot of Sömmering), 495.

COLLINS' SERIES OF FIRST-CLASS SCHOOL ATLA

Carefully Constructed and Engraved from the best and latest Authorit
Beautifully Printed in Colours, on Superfine Cream Wove Paper.

MODERN GEOGRAPHY—Crown Series.

MY FIRST ATLAS, consisting of 12 Maps, 9 inches by 7½ inches, folded 8vo, in Neat Wrapper, ...

1 The Hemispheres.
2 Europe.
3 Asia.
4 Africa.
5 North America.
6 South America.
7 England and Wales.
8 Scotland.
9 Ireland.
10 Central Europe.
11 Australia.
12 Palestine.

THE PRIMARY ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, 9 inches by 7½ inches, 4to, Stiff Wrapper, ...

1 The Hemispheres.
2 Europe.
3 Asia.
4 Africa.
5 North America.
6 South America.
7 England and Wales.
8 Scotland.
9 Ireland.
10 Central Europe.
11 India.
12 Canada.
13 United States.
14 Australia.
15 New Zealand.
16 Palestine.

THE POCKET ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, folded in 8vo, and mounted on Guards, cloth lettered, ...

THE JUNIOR, OR YOUNG CHILD'S ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, 4to, with 16 pp. of Questions on the Maps, in Neat Wrapper,

THE SCHOOL BOARD ATLAS, consisting of 24 Maps, Crown 4to, cloth limp, ...

THE PROGRESSIVE ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, 9 inches by 7½ inches, 4to, cloth lettered, ...

1 The Hemispheres.
2 The World, (Mercator's Projection.)
3 Europe.
4 Asia.
5 Africa.
6 North America.
7 South America.
8 England and Wales.
9 Scotland.
10 Ireland.
11 France.
12 Holland and Belgium.
13 Switzerland.
14 Spain and Portugal.
15 Italy.
16 Sweden, Norway, and Denmark.
17 German Empire.
18 Austria.
19 Russia in Europe.
20 Turkey in Europe, and Gre
21 India.
22 Persia, Afghanistan, and B
23 Turkey in Asia.
24 Chinese Empire and Japan
25 Arabia, Egypt, and Nubia.
26 Palestine.
27 Dominion of Canada.
28 United States.
29 West Indies.
30 Australia.
31 New South Wales, Victo
32 New Zealand. [South A

THE CROWN ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, on Guards, with Index, 8vo, cloth lettered, ...

THE NATIONAL ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, 4to, with a Copious Index, cloth lettered, ...

COLLINS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES—CONTINUED.

MODERN GEOGRAPHY—Imperial Series.

	s.	d.
THE SELECTED ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, Imperial 4to, 11 by 13 inches, Stiff Cover, ...	1	6

1 The Hemispheres.
2 Europe.
3 Asia.
4 Africa.
5 North America.
6 South America.
7 England and Wales.
8 Scotland.
9 Ireland.
10 Southern and Central Europe.
11 India.
12 Canada.
13 United States.
14 Australia.
15 New Zealand.
16 Palestine.

	s.	d.
THE PORTABLE ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, folded Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, ...	2	0
THE ADVANCED ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, Imperial 4to, cloth lettered, ...	3	6

1 Eastern and Western Hemispheres.
2 The World, (Mercator's Projection.)
3 Europe.
4 Asia.
5 Africa.
6 North America.
7 South America.
8 England and Wales.
9 Scotland.
10 Ireland.
11 France.
12 Holland and Belgium.
13 Switzerland.
14 Spain and Portugal.
15 Italy.
16 Sweden and Norway, Denmark and the Baltic.
17 German Empire.
18 Austria.
19 Russia.
20 Turkey in Europe, and Greece.
21 India.
22 Persia, Afghanistan, and Beloochistan.
23 Turkey in Asia.
24 Chinese Empire, and Japan.
25 Arabia, Egypt, Nubia, and Abyssinia.
26 Palestine.
27 Dominion of Canada.
28 United States.
29 West Indies and Central America.
30 Australia.
31 Victoria, New South Wales, and South Australia.
32 New Zealand.

	s.	d.
THE ACADEMIC ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, Imperial 4to, with a Copious Index, cloth lettered, ...	5	0
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, and 6 Ancient Maps, with a Copious Index, Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, ...	6	0

33 Ancient Greece.
34 Ancient Roman Empire.
35 Britain under the Romans.
36 Britain under the Saxons.
37 Historical Map of the British Islands from A.D. 1066.
38 France and Belgium, illustrating British History.

	s.	d.
THE COLLEGIATE ATLAS, consisting of 32 Modern, 16 Historical, and 2 Ancient Maps, mounted on Guards, with a Copious Index, Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, ...	7	6
THE INTERNATIONAL ATLAS, consisting of 32 Modern, 16 Historical, and 14 Maps of Classical Geography, with Descriptive Letterpress on Historical Geography by W. F. Collier, LL.D.; and on Classical Geography by L. Schmitz, LL.D., with Copious Indices, Imperial 8vo, cloth mounted on Guards, ...	10	6

COLLINS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES—Continued.

HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY.

	s.	d.
THE POCKET ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, 6½ by 11 inches, mounted on Guards, Imperial 16mo, cloth,	1	6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, with Letterpress Description by Wm. F. Collier, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth, ...	2	6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, with Letterpress Description by Wm. F. Collier, LL.D., 8vo, cloth, ...	3	0

1 Roman Empire, Eastern and Western, 4th Century.
2 Europe, 6th Century, shewing Settlements of the Barbarian Tribes.
3 Europe, 9th Century, shewing Empire of Charlemagne.
4 Europe, 10th Century, at the Rise of the German Empire.
5 Europe, 12th Century, at the Time of the Crusaders.
6 Europe, 16th Century, at the Eve of the Reformation.
7 Germany, 16th Century, Reformation and Thirty Years' War.
8 Europe, 17th and 18th Centuries.
9 Europe at the Peace of 1815.
10 Europe in 1870.
11 India, illustrating the Rise of the British Empire.
12 World, on Mercator's Projection, shewing Voyages of Discovery.
13 Britain under the Romans.
14 Britain under the Saxons.
15 Britain after Accession of William the Conqueror.
16 France and Belgium, illustrating British History.

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

	s.	d.
THE POCKET ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, Imperial 16mo, 6½ by 11 inches, cloth lettered, ...	1	6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, with Descriptive Letterpress, by Leonhard Schmitz, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth lettered, ...	2	6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, Imperial 8vo, with Descriptive Letterpress, by Leonhard Schmitz, LL.D., cloth lettered, ...	3	0

1 Orbis Veteribus Notus.
2 Ægyptus.
3 Regnum Alexandri Magni.
4 Macedonia, Thracia, &c.
5 Imperium Romanum.
6 Græcia.
7 Italia, (Septentrionalis.)
8 Italia, (Meridionalis.)
9 Armenia, Mesopotamia, &c.
10 Asia Minor.
11 Palestine, (Temp. Christi.)
12 Gallia.
13 Hispania.
14 Germania, &c.
15 Britannia.

Historical and Classical Atlas.

	s.	d.
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF HISTORICAL AND CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, consisting of 30 Maps as above, with Introductions on Historical Geography by W. F. Collier, LL.D., and on *Classical Geography* by Leonhard Schmitz, LL.D., with a Copious *Index, Imperial* 8vo, cloth, ...	5	0

William Collins, Sons, & Co.'s Educational Works.

COLLINS' SERIES OF FIRST-CLASS SCHOOL ATLASES,

Carefully Constructed and Engraved from the best and latest Authorities, and Beautifully Printed in Colours, on Superfine Cream Wove Paper.

MODERN GEOGRAPHY—Crown Series.

	s.	d.
MY FIRST ATLAS, consisting of 12 Maps, 9 inches by 7½ inches, folded 8vo, in Neat Wrapper, ...	0	6
THE PRIMARY ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, 9 inches by 7½ inches, 4to, Stiff Wrapper, ...	0	6
THE POCKET ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, folded in 8vo, and mounted on Guards, cloth lettered, ...	1	0
THE JUNIOR, OR YOUNG CHILD'S ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, 4to, with 16 pp. of Questions on the Maps, in Neat Wrapper,	1	0
THE STANDARD SCHOOL ATLAS, consisting of 24 Maps, Crown 4to, in Neat Wrapper, ...	1	0
THE PROGRESSIVE ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, 9 inches by 7½ inches, 4to, cloth lettered, ...	2	0
THE CROWN ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, on Guards, with Index, 8vo, cloth lettered, ...	2	6
THE NATIONAL ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, 4to, with a Copious Index, cloth lettered, ...	2	6

MODERN GEOGRAPHY—Imperial Series.

	s.	d.
THE SELECTED ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, Imperial 4to, 11 by 13 inches, Stiff Cover, ...	1	6
THE PORTABLE ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, folded Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, ...	2	0
THE ADVANCED ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, Imperial 4to, cloth lettered, ...	3	6
THE ACADEMIC ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, Imperial 4to, with a Copious Index, cloth lettered, ...	5	0
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, and 6 Ancient Maps, with a Copious Index, Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, ...	6	0
THE COLLEGIATE ATLAS, consisting of 32 Modern, 16 Historical, and 2 Ancient Maps, mounted on Guards, with a Copious Index, Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, ...	7	6
THE INTERNATIONAL ATLAS, consisting of 32 Modern, 16 Historical, and 14 Maps of Classical Geography, with Descriptive Letterpress on Historical Geography, by W. F. Collier, LL.D.; and on Classical Geography, by L. Schmitz, LL.D., with Copious Indices, Imperial 8vo, Cloth mounted on Guards, ...	10	6

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY—Demy Series.

	s.	d.
THE PRIMARY ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, Demy 4to, 9 by 11 inches, Stiff Cover, ...	1	0
THE POCKET ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, on Guards, Demy 8vo, cloth, ...	2	0

London, Edinburgh, and Herriot Hill Works, Glasgow.

COLLINS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES—CONTINUED.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY—Imperial Series.

	s.	d.
THE PORTABLE ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 20 Maps, 11 by 13 inches, mounted on Guards, Imp. 8vo, cloth, ...	3	6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 20 Maps, mounted on Guards. With Letterpress Description and Wood Engravings. By James Bryce, LL.D., F.R.G.S. Imp. 8vo, cl.,	5	0

HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY.

THE POCKET ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, 6½ by 11 inches, mounted on Guards, Imperial 16mo, cloth,	1	6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, with Letterpress Description by Wm. F. Collier, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth, ...	2	6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, Letterpress Description by Wm. F. Collier, LL.D., 8vo, cloth,	3	0

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

THE POCKET ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, Imperial 16mo, 6½ by 11 inches, cloth lettered, ...	1	6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, with Descriptive Letterpress, by Leonhard Schmitz, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth lettered, ...	2	6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, Imperial 8vo, with Descriptive Letterpress, by Leonhard Schmitz, LL.D., cloth lettered, ...	3	0

SCRIPTURE GEOGRAPHY.

THE ATLAS OF SCRIPTURE GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, with Questions on each Map, Stiff Cover, ...	1	0
THE POCKET ATLAS OF SCRIPTURE GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, 7½ by 9 inches, mounted on Guards, Imp. 16mo, cloth, ...	1	0

BLANK PROJECTIONS AND OUTLINES.

THE CROWN ATLAS OF BLANK PROJECTIONS, consisting of 16 Maps, Demy 4to, on Stout Drawing Paper, Stiff Wrapper, ...	0	6
THE CROWN OUTLINE ATLAS, 16 Maps, Demy 4to, Stout Drawing Paper, Stiff Wrapper, ...	0	6
THE IMPERIAL ATLAS OF BLANK PROJECTIONS, consisting of 16 Maps, Imperial 4to, on Stout Drawing Paper, Stiff Wrapper,	1	6
THE IMPERIAL OUTLINE ATLAS, 16 Maps, Imperial 4to, Stout Drawing Paper, Stiff Cover, ...	1	6